This supplement was sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium. The CME articles were sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/ Family Practice Education Network and Primary Care Education Consortium. It was edited and peer reviewed by *The Journal of Family Practice*.



Primary Care Education Consortium
WWW.PCECONSORTIUM.ORG

Illinois Academy of Family Physicians
WWW.IAFP.ORG

SUPPLEMENT TO
THE JOURNAL OF FAMILY PRACTICE®
VOL 66, NO 4 | APRIL 2017 | WWW.JFPONLINE.COM

A SPECIAL SUPPLEMENT ON

# Hot Topics in Primary Care

Individualizing Dual Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus S4

Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia: Is There Anything New? S10

Cardiovascular Safety of Medications for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus S16

Demystifying the Differences: Follow-on Biologics, Biosimilars, and Generics S22

Titratable Fixed-Ratio Combinations in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Focus on GLP-1R Agonists Combined With Basal Insulin S28

Diagnosis of Cirrhosis and Evaluation of Hepatic Encephalopathy: Common Errors and Their Significance for the PCP FREE 1.0 CME CREDIT S34

Role of the Microbiome in Disease: Implications for Treatment of Irritable Bowel Syndrome FREE 1.0 CME CREDIT S40

Medication Adherence in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Real-World Strategies for Addressing a Common Problem S46

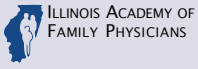
The Cardiovascular Safety of Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs: Putting the Evidence in Perspective S52

Sublingual Immunotherapy: A Guide for Primary Care S58

# Hot Topics in Primary Care


WWW.PCECONSORTIUM.ORG


WWW.PCMG-US.ORG




WWW.IAFP.ORG

## FACULTY

**Thomas C. Blevins, MD, FACE, FNLA, ECNU**
Texas Diabetes and Endocrinology
Austin, Texas

**Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP**
Adjunct Clinical Professor
Department of Clinical Pharmacy Practice
Roseman University
Salt Lake City, Utah
Executive Vice President for Education
Primary Care Education Consortium
Los Angeles, California

**Javed Butler, MD, MPH, MBA**
Cardiology Division
Stony Brook University
Stony Brook, New York

**Steven L. Flamm, MD**
Chief, Liver Transplantation Program
Professor of Medicine
Northwestern Feinberg School of Medicine
Chicago, Illinois

**Florence Jaffa, DO**
Abington Hospital – Jefferson Health
Family Medicine Office
Jenkintown, Pennsylvania

**Yan Kiriakov, DO**
Abington Hospital – Jefferson Health
Family Medicine Office
Jenkintown, Pennsylvania

**Brian E. Lacy, PhD, MD**
Professor of Medicine
Chief, Section of Gastroenterology & Hepatology
Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center
Lebanon, New Hampshire

**James LaSalle, DO, FAAFP**
The Excelsior Springs Clinic
Excelsior Springs, Missouri

**Hans Liu, MD, FACP**
Infectious Disease Specialist
Director of Antimicrobial Stewardship
Bryn Mawr Hospital
Professor of Medicine
Sidney Kimmel School of Medicine
Thomas Jefferson University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

**Eli O. Meltzer, MD**
Clinical Professor of Pediatrics
Division of Allergy and Immunology
University of California
San Diego, California

**Roy Daniel Pollom, MD**
Eli Lilly and Company
Indianapolis, Indiana

**William H. Polonsky, PhD, CDE**
President, Behavioral Diabetes Institute
Associate Clinical Professor, University of California
San Diego, California

**Martin Quan, MD**
Professor of Clinical Family Medicine
David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA
Vice Chair for Academic Affairs
UCLA Department of Family Medicine
Los Angeles, California

**Beverly Reed, MSN**
Eli Lilly and Company
Indianapolis, Indiana

**Neil S. Skolnik, MD**
Associate Director, Family Medicine Residency Program
Abington Memorial Hospital
Abington, Pennsylvania
Professor of Family and Community Medicine
Temple University School of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

**John R. White, Jr., PA-C, PharmD**
Chair and Professor
Department of Pharmacotherapy
Washington State University
College of Pharmacy
Spokane, Washington

**Eugene E. Wright, Jr., MD**
Consulting Associate
Department of Medicine and
Department of Community and Family Medicine
Southern Regional Area Health Education Center
Duke University School of Medicine
Durham, North Carolina

## FACULTY DISCLOSURES

**Thomas C. Blevins, MD, FACE, FNLA, ECNU,** discloses that he is on the speakers' bureaus for Amgen Inc; AstraZeneca; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Merck & Co., Inc.; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US. He receives research support from Eli Lilly and Company; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US.

**Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and Novo Nordisk Inc. He is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Allergan; Becton, Dickinson and Company; Cempra, Inc.; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; and Mylan N.V.

**Javed Butler, MD, MPH, MBA,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Amgen; Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals Inc.; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; CardioCell LLC; Gilead Sciences, Inc.; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; Merck & Co., Inc.; Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation; Relypsa, Inc.; Stealth Biotherapeutics Inc.; Trevena, Inc.; and ZS Pharma, Inc.

**Steven L. Flamm, MD,** discloses that he is on the advisory board and speakers' bureau for Salix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

**Florence Jaffa, DO,** discloses that she has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

**Yan Kiriakov, DO,** discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

**Brian E. Lacy, PhD, MD,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Ironwood Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; Prometheus Laboratories, Inc.; and Salix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and is a board member for the *American Journal of Gastroenterology*.

**James LaSalle, DO, FAAFP,** discloses that he is on the advisory board for Sanofi US and on the advisory board and speaker's bureau for Novo Nordisk Inc.

**Hans Liu, MD, FACP,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Cempra, Inc.; and Daiichi Sankyo Company, Ltd.

**Eli O. Meltzer, MD,** discoses that he is on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for Merck & Co., Inc.; and Stallergenes Greer.

**Roy Daniel Pollom, MD,** discloses that he is an employee and minor shareholder of Eli Lilly and Company.

**William H. Polonsky, PhD, CDE,** discloses that he on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Astra Zeneca; Dexcom, Inc.; Eli Lilly and Company; F. Hoffmann-La Roche Ltd; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; Livongo; Mannkind Corporation; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US.

**Martin Quan, MD,** discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

**Beverly Reed, MSN,** discloses that she is an employee and minor shareholder of Eli Lilly and Company.

**Neil S. Skolnik, MD,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for AstraZeneca; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation; Sanofi US; and Teva Pharmaceuticals USA, Inc. He is on the speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca and Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company, and does contracted research for AstraZeneca and Sanofi US.

**John R. White, Jr., PA-C, PharmD,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Novo Nordisk Inc, and Sanofi US.

**Eugene E. Wright, Jr., MD,** discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company Alliance; Eli Lilly and Company; and Voluntis USA. He serves on the speaker's bureaus for Abbott Diabetes Care; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company Alliance; and Eli Lilly and Company.

## STATEMENT OF SPONSORSHIP AND SUPPORT

**Individualizing Dual Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from AstraZeneca.

**Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia: Is There Anything New?** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Cempra, Inc.

**Cardiovascular Safety of Medications for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

**Demystifying the Differences: Follow-on Biologics, Biosimilars, and Generics** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Eli Lilly and Company.

**Titratable Fixed-Ratio Combinations in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Focus on GLP-1R Agonists Combined With Basal Insulin** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Sanofi US.

**Diagnosis of Cirrhosis and Evaluation of Hepatic Encephalopathy: Common Errors and Their Significance for the PCP** is sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network and Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals.

**Role of the Microbiome in Disease: Implications for Treatment of Irritable Bowel Syndrome** is sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network and Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals.

**Medication Adherence in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Real-World Strategies for Addressing a Common Problem** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.

**The Cardiovascular Safety of Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs: Putting the Evidence in Perspective** is sponsored and developed by Primary Care Education Consortium.

**Sublingual Immunotherapy: A Guide for Primary Care** is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Stallergenes Greer.

## EDITORIAL ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Editorial support for this supplement was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, and Angela Cimmino, PharmD.

# Hot Topics in Primary Care
## Table of Contents


Introduction ..... S3
Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP

Individualizing Dual Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus ..... S4
Neil S. Skolnik, MD; Florence Jaffa, DO; and Yan Kiriakov, DO

Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia: Is There Anything New? ..... S10
Hans Liu, MD, FACP

Cardiovascular Safety of Medications for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus ..... S16
Javed Butler, MD, MPH, MBA

Demystifying the Differences: Follow-on Biologics, Biosimilars, and Generics ..... S22
Eugene E. Wright, Jr., MD; Thomas C. Blevins MD, FACE, FNLA, ECNU; Beverly Reed, MSN; and Roy Daniel Pollom, MD

Titratable Fixed-Ratio Combinations in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Focus on GLP-1R Agonists Combined With Basal Insulin ..... S28
James LaSalle, DO, FAAFP; and John R. White, Jr., PA-C, PharmD

FREE 1.0 CME CREDIT
Diagnosis of Cirrhosis and Evaluation of Hepatic Encephalopathy: Common Errors and Their Significance for the PCP ..... S34
Steven L. Flamm, MD

FREE 1.0 CME CREDIT
Role of the Microbiome in Disease: Implications for Treatment of Irritable Bowel Syndrome ..... S40
Brian E. Lacy, PhD, MD

Medication Adherence in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Real-World Strategies for Addressing a Common Problem ..... S46
Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP; and William H. Polonsky, PhD, CDE

The Cardiovascular Safety of Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs: Putting the Evidence in Perspective ..... S52
Martin Quan, MD

Sublingual Immunotherapy: A Guide for Primary Care ..... S58
Eli O. Meltzer, MD



Primary Care Education Consortium
WWW.PCECONSORTIUM.ORG

PCMG Primary Care Metabolic Group
WWW.PCMG-US.ORG

Illinois Academy of Family Physicians
WWW.IAFP.ORG

# Introduction

Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP

The rapidly evolving management of myriad diseases encountered in primary care makes it challenging for the family physician to provide optimal evidence-based patient care. The goal of this supplement is to help family physicians address some of these challenges by offering the insights of fellow physicians who have extensive experience with these management issues.

The Prospective Randomized Evaluation of Celecoxib Integrated Safety versus Ibuprofen or Naproxen (PRECISION) trial was intended to provide greater clarity regarding the cardiovascular safety of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Study limitations have important implications for primary care.

Alterations in the human microbiome are increasingly recognized as contributing to human disease. Treatments that target the gut microbiota are proving useful for patients with irritable bowel syndrome, as well as cirrhosis and hepatic encephalopathy. Early recognition of cirrhosis in primary care is essential to slow disease progression.

Although not much has changed in the management of patients with community-acquired bacterial pneumonia over the past decade, there are new developments on the horizon with the anticipated release of new treatment guidelines, as well as new antibiotics.

The provision of immunotherapy is a modality that has not been accessible for most family physicians. Four products recently became available in the United States that allow for allergen immunotherapy via the sublingual route. Offering similar efficacy as subcutaneous immunotherapy, these sublingual products have important benefits that make them useful for managing grass, pollen, and dust mite allergies in primary care.

As physicians on the front line managing the pandemic of diabetes, numerous advances allow greater opportunity to individualize care and improve patient outcomes. This includes new medication classes as add-on therapy to metformin such as the dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors and glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists that act on the incretin system, and the sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors that act on the kidney. These medications—particularly the glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists—are recommended as an alternative to prandial insulin for patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus with inadequate glycemic control with basal insulin. An important consideration in selecting therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus is medication safety. The results of several of the many clinical trials assessing their cardiovascular safety have recently been published with important implications for patient management.

Another option for the management of patients with diabetes mellitus has become available with the approval of the follow-on biologic insulin glargine in the United States. Meeting more stringent regulatory standards, there are important differences between follow-on biologics and generic small-molecule medications. Along with implementation of the Necessity-Concerns Framework and shared decision-making as part of effective patient-provider communication, new drugs and drug delivery systems for diabetes have become available (with more on the horizon) to address key patient barriers related to medication adherence.

I hope you find *Hot Topics in Primary Care* helpful as you continue to provide the highest quality of care for your patients.

**Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP,** Adjunct Clinical Professor, Department of Clinical Pharmacy Practice, Roseman University, Salt Lake City, UT; Executive Vice President for Education, Primary Care Education Consortium, Los Angeles, CA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Brunton discloses that he is on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and Novo Nordisk Inc. He is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Allergan; Becton, Dickinson and Company; Cempra, Inc.; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; and Mylan N.V.

# Individualizing Dual Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

Neil S. Skolnik, MD; Florence Jaffa, DO; and Yan Kiriakov, DO

## INTRODUCTION

While many advances in the management of patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) have occurred over the past decade, nearly half of patients with diabetes still have a glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) above the target of 7.0%.[1]

The combination of lifestyle management with or without metformin is recommended as initial treatment for patients with newly diagnosed T2DM in the American Diabetes Association/European Association for the Study of Diabetes (ADA/EASD) guidelines.[2] Metformin is the recommended first-line medication based on efficacy, safety, and cost.[2] It can take 2 years to intensify therapy when patients are not at goal on a single medication.[3] Timely treatment intensification has been shown to be important for those who do not achieve their individualized target HbA1c level.[4-6]

## OPTIONS FOR INTENSIFYING METFORMIN MONOTHERAPY

The 2015 ADA/EASD position statement recommends that the decision about which medication to use next after metformin be individualized based on 5 primary characteristics of the medications: efficacy, risk of hypoglycemia, effect on weight, side effects, and costs. The 6 classes recommended with equal preference are: dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitor, glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (GLP-1RA), insulin (basal), sodium-glucose cotransporter-2 (SGLT-2) inhibitor, sulfonylurea (SU), and thiazolidinedione (TZD).[2] In contrast, the 2016 American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists/American College of Endocrinology (AACE/ACE) algorithm suggests a hierarchy of usage after metformin in the following order from highest to lowest preference: GLP-1RA, SGLT-2 inhibitor, DPP-4 inhibitor, TZD, and basal insulin as the top 5, while individualizing decisions.[7] Clearly defining the desired characteristics of a potential second-line medication and understanding how each medication class fits with regard to these characteristics will facilitate selecting treatment for an individual patient. This review summarizes the clinical characteristics of the antihyperglycemic medication classes recommended by the ADA/EASD and AACE/ACE guidelines.

### Ideal attributes for second-line therapy

While it is clear that medication choices need to be individualized to a patient's needs, interests, and capabilities, certain characteristics can be considered as desirable in a second-line medication. These characteristics include high efficacy (ie, a meaningful effect on HbA1c), weight loss instead of weight gain, low risk of hypoglycemia, favorable cost, tolerable side effect and adverse event profiles, and good glycemic durability (length of time treatment maintains glycemic control at maximally tolerated doses).

## SULFONYLUREAS

SUs remain widely used in combination with metformin because of their complementary mechanism of action, efficacy in lowering HbA1c, and low cost[7-10] (**TABLE**[8-29]).The addition of an SU to metformin reduces HbA1c ~1%.[30] The United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study 33 (UKPDS 33) demonstrated that intensive glycemic management with either an SU or basal or basal-bolus insulin decreased risk of microvascular complications over 10 years, with macrovascular benefit emerging after an additional 10 years of follow-up.[5,31]

**Neil S. Skolnik, MD,** Associate Director, Family Medicine Residency Program, Abington Memorial Hospital, Abington, PA; Professor of Family and Community Medicine, Temple University School of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA

**Florence Jaffa, DO,** Abington Hospital – Jefferson Health, Family Medicine Office, Jenkintown, PA

**Yan Kiriakov, DO,** Abington Hospital – Jefferson Health, Family Medicine Office, Jenkintown, PA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Skolnik discloses that he is on the advisory boards for AstraZeneca; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation; Sanofi US; and Teva Pharmaceuticals USA, Inc. He is on the speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca and Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company, and does contracted research for AstraZeneca and Sanofi US.

Dr. Jaffa discloses that she has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

Dr. Kiriakov discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from AstraZeneca.

**TABLE** Key attributes of selected antihyperglycemic medications[a]

| | SU[8-10] | TZD[11,12] | SGLT-2 inhibitor[13-15] | DPP-4 inhibitor[16-19] | GLP-1RA[20-25] | Basal insulin[26-29] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **HbA1c reduction[b]** | ~1% | 0.4%-0.9% | 0.5%-1% | 0.4%-0.5% | 0.5%-1.3% | Theoretically unlimited[2] |
| **Glycemic durability** | + | ++ | ++/+++ | ++ | ++/+++ | +++ |
| **Effect on weight** | ↑ | ↑ | ↓ | ↔ | ↓ | ↑ |
| **Other safety concerns** | Sulfonamide hypersensitivity (glim, glyb); hypoglycemia; hypersensitivity reactions; hemolytic anemia; weight gain | Heart failure; ischemic CV events (rosi); hepatic failure; bladder cancer (rosi); edema/ weight gain; fractures; macular edema; decreased hemoglobin/ hematocrit; hypoglycemia with SU or insulin | Severe renal impairment, ESRD, dialysis; hypotension; ketoacidosis; acute kidney injury/ renal impairment; hyperkalemia (cana); urosepsis/ pyelonephritis; genital mycotic infection; ↑LDL-C; bladder cancer (dapa); bone fracture; hypoglycemia with SU or insulin; leg and foot amputation, mostly affecting toes (cana) | Acute pancreatitis; acute renal failure (sita); allergic/ hypersensitivity reactions; arthralgia; heart failure (saxa, alo); hepatic failure (alo); hypoglycemia with SU or insulin | Medullary thyroid cancer (alb, dula, ex QW, lira); multiple endocrine neoplasia syndrome (alb, dula, ex QW, lira); thyroid C-cell tumors (alb, dula, ex QW, lira); pancreatitis; renal impairment; gastroparesis (alb, dula, ex QW, lix); hypersensitivity reactions; injection-site reactions (ex QW); hypoglycemia with SU or insulin; nausea, vomiting, diarrhea | Hypoglycemia; hypokalemia; allergic reactions; fluid retention with TZD |
| **Risk of hypoglycemia** | Moderate | Low | Low | Low | Low | High |
| **Cost** | Low | Low | High | High | High | High |

**Abbreviations:** alb, albiglutide; alo, alogliptin; cana, canagliflozin; CV, cardiovascular; dapa, dapagliflozin; DPP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase-4; dula, dulaglutide; ESRD, end-stage renal disease; ex QW, exenatide once weekly; glim, glimepiride; GLP-1RA, glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist; gly, glyburide; HbA1c, glycated hemoglobin; LDL-C, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; lira, liraglutide; lix, lixisenatide; rosi, rosiglitazone; saxa, saxagliptin; SGLT-2, sodium-glucose cotransporter-2; sita, sitagliptin; SU, sulfonylurea; TZD, thiazolidinedione.

[a]See text for differences, if any, among medications within the same class. Data are not based on head-to-head comparisons.

[b]As add-on therapy to metformin.

+ = limited; ++ = good; +++ = excellent.

↓ = decrease; ↔ = no change; ↑ = increase.

However, the effects of SUs on macrovascular complications are currently an area of controversy.[30,32] In older adults, shorter-acting SUs, such as glipizide, are preferred over longer-acting agents, such as glyburide, which have considerably greater risk for hypoglycemia.[33]

Limitations of SUs include an average weight gain of 2.2 kg, moderate risk for hypoglycemia, and limited glycemic durability.[30,34] A meta-analysis found a higher risk for hypoglycemia with the addition of an SU compared with the addition of a DPP-4 inhibitor, GLP-1RA, SGLT-2 inhibitor, or TZD.[32] These limitations are reflected in the AACE/ACE guidelines citing a lower preference for SUs.[7,30]

## THIAZOLIDINEDIONES

TZDs are moderately effective in lowering HbA1c when used in combination with metformin.[35,36] Addition of a TZD to metformin reduces HbA1c ~0.9%.[30] TZDs have a low risk of hypoglycemia and are associated with improvements in high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and triglyceride levels.[2] In addition, rosiglitazone has demonstrated superior glycemic durability over a median of 4 years compared with metformin or glyburide.[37]

The limitations with TZDs lie in their side effect profile, including peripheral edema and weight gain.[30] Rosiglitazone is no longer widely used because of eventually unsubstantiated concerns of increased cardiovascular (CV) risk.[38,39] In contrast, pioglitazone may reduce the risk for the composite of death, myocardial infarction (MI), or stroke, and recently has been shown to decrease the risk for recurrent stroke in patients with insulin resistance without diabetes who have had a transient ischemic attack or minor, nondisabling ischemic stroke.[40,41] TZDs increase the risk for heart failure

in patients with or without established vascular disease and should not be used in patients with Class III-IV heart failure or those with symptomatic heart failure.[40,42]

Several meta-analyses have confirmed a 2-fold increase in the risk of fractures with both rosiglitazone and pioglitazone in women, but not in men.[43-45] The risk appears to be independent of age. Significant changes in bone mineral density were observed at the lumbar spine, femoral neck, and hip.[44,45]

An association between TZDs and bladder cancer continues to be controversial.[46] The ADA/EASD has concluded, "Earlier concerns that the TZDs—in particular pioglitazone—are associated with bladder cancer have largely been allayed by subsequent evidence."[2,47] In contrast, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) announced in December 2016 that it has concluded that use of pioglitazone may be linked to an increased risk for bladder cancer.[48]

## GLP-1 RECEPTOR AGONISTS

Addition of a GLP-1RA to metformin reduces HbA1c 0.5% to 1.3%.[30] Severe hypoglycemia is a rare event.[49-54] Weight loss, averaging 2 kg to 5 kg when a GLP-1RA is added to metformin, may be important to some patients,[30,49-55] although the need to inject GLP-1RAs may be a barrier for others. Delayed gastric emptying is more pronounced with the short-acting GLP-1RAs exenatide twice daily and lixisenatide, which likely contributes to their greater effects on postprandial glucose (PPG).[56,57] The longer-acting GLP-1RAs (albiglutide, dulaglutide, exenatide once weekly, and liraglutide) provide more sustained effects on the 24-hour glucose level and have minimal impact on gastric motility, resulting in a greater effect on fasting plasma glucose (FPG) and greater reduction of HbA1c than short-acting GLP-1RAs.[58]

Improvements in various markers of β-cell function have been reported in patients with T2DM treated with a GLP-1RA, which suggests that they may have good durability of response.[59,60] In fact, a recent meta-analysis concluded that glycemic durability with the addition of a GLP-1RA to metformin was comparable to the addition of an SGLT-2 inhibitor and greater than the addition of a DPP-4 inhibitor, TZD, or SU over 24 weeks to 76.8 months of follow-up.[32]

Another potential benefit of GLP-1RAs is a modest reduction in systolic (0 mm Hg to 6 mm Hg) and diastolic (0 mm Hg to 4 mm Hg) blood pressure, with no significant differences appreciated among the GLP-1RAs.[30,49,51-53,55,61] Additionally, a reduction in the blood triglyceride level has been noted, albeit over a wide range (2 mg/dL to 73 mg/dL).[49,55,61]

Recently, lixisenatide was shown to have a risk similar to that of placebo with respect to major adverse cardiovascular events (MACE), a composite of CV death, nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, and hospitalization for unstable angina in patients with a history of MI or recent hospitalization for unstable angina.[62] Liraglutide has been shown to yield a significant reduction in MACE as well as all-cause death, CV death, microvascular events, and nephropathy in patients at high CV risk.[63]

The incidence of gastrointestinal (GI) side effects associated with GLP-1RAs, including diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting, is about 50% to 100% greater when compared with therapy with metformin alone.[49,51-53,55,64] GI side effects are greatest in the first weeks of therapy and generally decline in frequency and severity thereafter. The association of incretin-based medications with an increased risk for pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer has been widely debated. A 2014 review by the FDA and European Medicines Agency concluded that "assertions concerning a causal association between incretin-based drugs and pancreatitis or pancreatic cancer, as expressed recently in the scientific literature and in the media, are inconsistent with current data. …Although the totality of the data that have been reviewed provides reassurance, pancreatitis will continue to be considered a risk associated with these drugs until more data are available".[65] A recent large, observational study raised the possibility of an association between the use of GLP-1RAs and an increased risk for bile duct and gallbladder disease (cholelithiasis, cholecystitis, cholangitis) compared with current use of at least 2 oral antihyperglycemic drugs (hazard ratio, 1.79).[66]

## DPP-4 INHIBITORS

Key positive features of the DPP-4 inhibitor class of medications are safety and tolerability. The risk for overall, mild, moderate, total, or severe hypoglycemia with the combination of a DPP-4 inhibitor and metformin is low and similar to that with metformin monotherapy.[30,67-70] Additionally, the incidence of abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting is generally similar when comparing the combination of metformin and DDP-4 inhibitor with metformin monotherapy.[30] DPP-4 inhibitors have been associated with a neutral effect on weight and a low incidence of hypoglycemia.[30,67-70] They have lower efficacy in HbA1c reduction than some other agents,[30,67-70] providing modest reduction of HbA1c of 0.5% to 0.65% when added to metformin.[30]

DPP-4 inhibitors have been shown to improve several markers of β-cell function.[71-74] Limited data suggest less favorable improvement in β-cell function associated with the DPP-4 inhibitors compared with GLP-1RAs.[75]

Recent CV outcomes trials showed no increase in the risk of MACE with alogliptin, saxagliptin, and sitagliptin.[76-78] An FDA analysis of these studies concluded that there is a 20% to 25% increased risk of hospitalization for heart failure with alogliptin and saxagliptin.[79]

As with the GLP-1RAs, a question of increased risk for pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer has been raised, with conflicting conclusions.[80-83]

## SGLT-2 INHIBITORS

The addition of an SGLT-2 inhibitor to metformin results in an ~0.5% to 1.4% reduction in HbA1c.[84-89] It also confers a low risk of hypoglycemia, with an incidence that appears to be the same or only slightly higher than that with metformin alone.[30,86] Additional reduction in body weight averaging 1 kg to 4 kg has been observed following the addition of an SGLT-2 inhibitor to metformin.[30,84-88] The addition of an SGLT-2 inhibitor to metformin reduces systolic blood pressure an average of 4 mm Hg compared with metformin alone.[30]

SGLT-2 inhibitor therapy increases β-cell insulin secretion and increases insulin sensitivity; improvement in β-cell function appears to result from reduced hyperglycemia.[90-92] SGLT-2 inhibitors have demonstrated sustained glycemic control over 2 years as add-on therapy to metformin.[93-95] In one 4-year, randomized, double-blind study, the addition of dapagliflozin provided greater glycemic durability as well as sustained reductions in weight, systolic blood pressure, and hypoglycemia compared with glipizide.[96] The rate of hypoglycemia was nearly 10-fold lower with dapagliflozin than with glipizide (5.4% vs. 51.5%). Urinary tract infections (UTIs) and genital mycotic infections are the most commonly reported adverse events associated with SGLT-2 inhibitors. A meta-analysis showed a 3-fold greater risk of genital mycotic infections in women and men with the addition of an SGLT-2 inhibitor to metformin than with metformin alone.[30] In contrast, the meta-analysis found a similar rate of UTIs with the combination therapy vs metformin alone.

During the past year, the FDA has issued several drug safety communications regarding 1 or more SGLT-2 inhibitors. These are an increased risk for:

- bone fracture and decreased bone mineral density with canagliflozin[97]
- ketoacidosis and UTI with canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, and empagliflozin[98]
- acute kidney injury with canagliflozin and dapagliflozin[99]
- leg and foot amputations, mostly affecting the toes, with canagliflozin.[100]

A small, dose-dependent increase in low-density lipoprotein cholesterol is seen when an SGLT-2 inhibitor is added to metformin.[84,85,87] In the CV outcome study in patients at high CV risk, the SGLT-2 inhibitor empagliflozin showed a significant reduction in composite MACE outcome (14% relative risk reduction) as well as all-cause mortality (32% relative risk reduction).[101]

## BASAL INSULIN

Basal insulin is another recommended option across the spectrum of T2DM management, including as add-on therapy to lifestyle management and metformin. Basal insulin should be considered a part of any combination regimen when hyperglycemia is severe, especially if the patient is symptomatic or if catabolic features, eg, weight loss or ketosis, are evident.[2] Basal insulin has the advantage of effectively lowering blood glucose when other medications may not. On the other hand, hypoglycemia and weight gain serve as barriers to treatment with basal insulin.[49,102,103]

## ESCALATION FROM SINGLE-AGENT TO TRIPLE-AGENT THERAPY

Treatment of patients with T2DM has generally involved the sequential addition and titration of therapy until the glycemic targets are achieved.[2] The concept of intensifying metformin monotherapy by adding 2 medications at the same time, as well as combining therapy for initial treatment of diabetes, has been proposed to help patients achieve glycemic control earlier in the disease course. Four clinical trials investigated the simultaneous addition of 2 medications with complementary mechanisms of action in patients who had not achieved their glycemic target despite maximal doses of metformin. These 4 trials include the simultaneous addition to metformin of exenatide and dapagliflozin, saxagliptin and dapagliflozin, alogliptin and pioglitazone, and empagliflozin and linagliptin.[89,104-106] In patients with mean HbA1c of 7.9% to 9.3% at baseline, these 24- to 52-week trials showed greater HbA1c reduction with the simultaneous addition of the 2 medications vs single-agent therapy.[89,104-106] Combination therapy after metformin may decrease the risk of therapeutic inertia and initially yields better HbA1c control, but whether this approach leads to longer-term benefit remains to be proven.

## SUMMARY

Several classes of antihyperglycemic medications have been recommended in guidelines by both the ADA/EASD and AACE/ACE for patients who have not achieved adequate glycemic control with metformin and lifestyle management alone. Important attributes for second-line therapy include clinically meaningful glycemic efficacy, weight loss instead of weight gain, low risk of hypoglycemia, favorable cost, and tolerable side effect and adverse event profiles. SGLT-2 inhibitors and GLP-1RAs both have good glycemic efficacy, weight loss, low risk of hypoglycemia when not combined with agents known to cause hypoglycemia, and good glycemic durability. In addition, empagliflozin and liraglutide have demonstrated a favorable effect on MACE in high-risk individuals. SGLT-2 inhibitors and GLP-1RAs have a well-defined

side effect profile, primarily involving an increase in mycotic infections and UTIs for SGLT-2 inhibitors and GI side effects that diminish over time for GLP-1RAs. DPP-4 inhibitors have lower glycemic efficacy and are not associated with weight loss, although they are well tolerated and have few associated side effects or adverse events. TZDs have very good glycemic efficacy and a low incidence of hypoglycemia, but are associated with weight gain and side effects that include peripheral edema, increased risk for exacerbation of heart failure, and fracture. SUs have good glycemic efficacy and low cost, but have a high incidence of hypoglycemia and weight gain. Basal insulin also has good glycemic efficacy, but has a high incidence of hypoglycemia and weight gain. Recognizing the benefits and limitations of each class of medication and considering the differences among medications in light of specific patient needs and preferences will help clinicians individualize treatment and improve patient outcomes. ●

**REFERENCES**


1. Wong ND, Patao C, Wong K, et al. Trends in control of cardiovascular risk factors among US adults with type 2 diabetes from 1999 to 2010: comparison by prevalent cardiovascular disease status. *Diab Vasc Dis Res.* 2013;10(6):505-513.
2. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes, 2015: A patient-centered approach: Update to a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2015;38(1):140-149.
3. Khunti K, Wolden ML, Thorsted BL, et al. Clinical inertia in people with type 2 diabetes: a retrospective cohort study of more than 80,000 people. *Diabetes Care.* 2013;36(11):3411-3417.
4. Skyler JS, Bergenstal R, Bonow RO, et al. Intensive glycemic control and the prevention of cardiovascular events: implications of the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VA diabetes trials: a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and a scientific statement of the American College of Cardiology Foundation and the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2009;119(2):351-357.
5. Holman RR, Paul SK, Bethel MA, et al. 10-year follow-up of intensive glucose control in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2008;359(15):1577-1589.
6. Paul SK, Klein K, Thorsted BL, et al. Delay in treatment intensification increases the risks of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Cardiovasc Diabetol.* 2015;14:100.
7. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, et al. Consensus Statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the Comprehensive Type 2 Diabetes Management Algorithm--2016 Executive Summary. *Endocr Pract.* 2016;22(1):84-113.
8. Amaryl [package insert]. Bridgewater, NJ: sanofi-aventis U.S. LLC; 2013.
9. Glucotrol [package insert]. New York, NY: Roerig; 2016.
10. Diabeta [package insert]. Bridgewater, NJ: sanofi-aventis U.S.; 2013.
11. Actos [package insert]. Deerfield, IL: Takeda Pharmaceuticals America, Inc.; 2016.
12. Avandia [package insert]. Research Triangle Park, NC: GlaxoSmithKline; 2016.
13. Invokana [package insert]. Titusville, NJ: Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; 2016.
14. Farxiga [package insert]. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP; 2016.
15. Jardiance [package insert]. Ridgefield, CT: Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; 2016.
16. Nesina [package insert]. Deerfield, IL: Takeda Pharmaceuticals America, Inc.; 2016.
17. Tradjenta [package insert]. Ridgefield, CT: Boehringer-Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc; 2015.
18. Onglyza [package insert]. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP; 2017.
19. Januvia [package insert]. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., Inc.; 2017.
20. Tanzeum [package insert]. Research Triangle Park, NC: GlaxoSmithKline LLC; 2016.
21. Trulicity [package insert]. Indianapolis, IN: Eli Lilly and Company; 2016.
22. Byetta [package insert]. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP.; 2015.
23. Bydureon [package insert]. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP.; 2015.
24. Victoza [package insert]. Plainsboro, NJ: Novo Nordisk Inc.; 2016.
25. Adlyxin [package insert]. Bridgewater, NJ: sanofi-aventis U.S. LLC; 2016.
26. Levemir [package insert]. Plainsboro, NJ: Novo Nordisk Inc.; 2015.
27. Lantus [package insert]. Bridgewater, NJ: sanofi-aventis U.S. LLC; 2015.
28. Tresiba [package insert]. Plainsboro, NJ: Novo Nordisk Inc.; 2016.
29. Toujeo [package insert]. Bridgewater, NJ: sanofi-aventis US, LLC; 2015.
30. Bolen S, Tseng E, Hutfless S, et al. Diabetes Medications for Adults with Type 2 Diabetes: An update Comparative Effectiveness Review No. 173. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. https://www.effectivehealthcare.ahrq.gov/ehc/products/607/2215/diabetes-update-2016-report.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
31. UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). *Lancet.* 1998;352(9131):837-853.
32. Palmer SC, Mavridis D, Nicolucci A, et al. Comparison of clinical outcomes and adverse events associated with glucose-lowering drugs in patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. *JAMA.* 2016;316(3):313-324.
33. American Diabetes Association. 11. Older Adults. *Diabetes Care.* 2017;40(Suppl 1):S99-S104.
34. DeFronzo RA. Current issues in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Overview of newer agents: where treatment is going. *Am J Med.* 2010;123(3 suppl):S38-S48.
35. Einhorn D, Rendell M, Rosenzweig J, et al. Pioglitazone hydrochloride in combination with metformin in the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus: a randomized, placebo-controlled study. The Pioglitazone 027 Study Group. *Clin Ther.* 2000;22(12):1395-1409.
36. Fonseca V, Rosenstock J, Patwardhan R, et al. Effect of metformin and rosiglitazone combination therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA.* 2000;283(13):1695-1702.
37. Kahn SE, Lachin JM, Zinman B, et al. Effects of rosiglitazone, glyburide, and metformin on beta-cell function and insulin sensitivity in ADOPT. *Diabetes.* 2011;60(5):1552-1560.
38. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Rosiglitazone revisited: an updated meta-analysis of risk for myocardial infarction and cardiovascular mortality. *Arch Intern Med.* 2010;170(14):1191-1201.
39. Singh S, Loke YK, Furberg CD. Long-term risk of cardiovascular events with rosiglitazone: a meta-analysis. *JAMA.* 2007;298(10):1189-1195.
40. Lincoff AM, Wolski K, Nicholls SJ, et al. Pioglitazone and risk of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *JAMA.* 2007;298(10):1180-1188.
41. Kernan WN, Viscoli CM, Furie KL, et al. Pioglitazone after ischemic stroke or transient ischemic attack. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;374(14):1321-1331.
42. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes in oral agent combination therapy for type 2 diabetes (RECORD): a multicentre, randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet.* 2009;373(9681):2125-2135.
43. Kahn SE, Haffner SM, Heise MA, et al. Glycemic durability of rosiglitazone, metformin, or glyburide monotherapy. *N Engl J Med.* 2006;355(23):2427-2443.
44. Loke YK, Singh S, Furberg CD. Long-term use of thiazolidinediones and fractures in type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis. *CMAJ.* 2009;180(1):32-39.
45. Zhu ZN, Jiang YF, Ding T. Risk of fracture with thiazolidinediones: an updated meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Bone.* 2014;68:115-123.
46. Gionfriddo MR, Morey-Vargas OL, Brito JP, et al. Systematic reviews to ascertain the safety of diabetes medications. *Curr Diab Rep.* 2014;14(4):478.
47. Levin D, Bell S, Sund R, et al. Pioglitazone and bladder cancer risk: a multipopulation pooled, cumulative exposure analysis. *Diabetologia.* 2015;58(3):493-504.
48. US Food and Drug Administration. Updated FDA review concludes that use of type 2 diabetes medicine pioglitazone may be linked to an increased risk of bladder cancer. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM532691.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
49. Ratner RE, Maggs D, Nielsen LL, et al. Long-term effects of exenatide therapy over 82 weeks on glycaemic control and weight in over-weight metformin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2006;8(4):419-428.
50. Kim D, MacConell L, Zhuang D, et al. Effects of once-weekly dosing of a long-acting release formulation of exenatide on glucose control and body weight in subjects with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2007;30(6):1487-1493.
51. Nauck M, Frid A, Hermansen K, et al. Efficacy and safety comparison of liraglutide, glimepiride, and placebo, all in combination with metformin, in type 2 diabetes: the LEAD (liraglutide effect and action in diabetes)-2 study. *Diabetes Care.* 2009;32(1):84-90.
52. Ahrén B, Johnson SL, Stewart M, et al. HARMONY 3: 104-week randomized, double-blind, placebo- and active-controlled trial assessing the efficacy and safety of albiglutide compared with placebo, sitagliptin, and glimepiride in patients with type 2 diabetes taking metformin. *Diabetes Care.* 2014;37(8):2141-2148.
53. Weinstock RS, Guerci B, Umpierrez G, et al. Safety and efficacy of once-weekly dulaglutide versus sitagliptin after 2 years in metformin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes (AWARD-5): a randomized, phase III study. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2015;17(9):849-858.
54. Bolli GB, Munteanu M, Dotsenko S, et al. Efficacy and safety of lixisenatide once daily vs. placebo in people with type 2 diabetes insufficiently controlled on metformin (GetGoal-F1). *Diabet Med.* 2014;31(2):176-184.
55. Pratley R, Nauck M, Bailey T, et al. One year of liraglutide treatment offers sustained and more effective glycaemic control and weight reduction compared with sitagliptin, both in combination with metformin, in patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomised, parallel-group, open-label trial. *Int J Clin Pract.* 2011;65(4):397-407.
56. Meier JJ, Rosenstock J, Hincelin-Mery A, et al. Contrasting effects of lixisenatide and liraglutide on postprandial glycemic control, gastric emptying, and safety parameters in patients with type 2 diabetes on optimized insulin glargine with or without metformin: a randomized, open-label trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2015;38(7):1263-1273.
57. Jelsing J, Vrang N, Hansen G, et al. Liraglutide: short-lived effect on gastric emptying

—long lasting effects on body weight. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2012;14(6):531-538.
58. Madsbad S. Review of head-to-head comparisons of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2016;18(4):317-332.
59. Grandy S, Shaunik A, Hardy E. Effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists on beta-cell function in patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Diabetes Metab*. 2016;7(1):1-8.
60. Mari A, Del Prato S, Ludvik B, et al. Differential effects of once-weekly glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist dulaglutide and metformin on pancreatic beta-cell and insulin sensitivity during a standardized test meal in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2016;18(8):834-839.
61. Klonoff DC, Buse JB, Nielsen LL, et al. Exenatide effects on diabetes, obesity, cardiovascular risk factors and hepatic biomarkers in patients with type 2 diabetes treated for at least 3 years. *Curr Med Res Opin*. 2008;24(1):275-286.
62. Pfeffer MA, Claggett B, Diaz R, et al. Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute coronary syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(23):2247-2257.
63. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(4):311-322.
64. DeFronzo RA, Ratner RE, Han J, et al. Effects of exenatide (exendin-4) on glycemic control and weight over 30 weeks in metformin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*. 2005;28(5):1092-1100.
65. Egan AG, Blind E, Dunder K, et al. Pancreatic safety of incretin-based drugs--FDA and EMA assessment. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370(9):794-797.
66. Faillie JL, Yu OH, Yin H, et al. Association of bile duct and gallbladder diseases with the use of incretin-based drugs in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2016;176(10):1474-1481.
67. Seck T, Nauck M, Sheng D, et al. Safety and efficacy of treatment with sitagliptin or glipizide in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled on metformin: a 2-year study. *Int J Clin Pract*. 2010;64(5):562-576.
68. Pfützner A, Paz-Pacheco E, Allen E, et al. Initial combination therapy with saxagliptin and metformin provides sustained glycaemic control and is well tolerated for up to 76 weeks. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2011;13(6):567-576.
69. Haak T, Meinicke T, Jones R, et al. Initial combination of linagliptin and metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes: efficacy and safety in a randomised, double-blind 1-year extension study. *Int J Clin Pract*. 2013;67(12):1283-1293.
70. Pratley RE, Fleck P, Wilson C. Efficacy and safety of initial combination therapy with alogliptin plus metformin versus either as monotherapy in drug-naive patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized, double-blind, 6-month study. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2014;16(7):613-621.
71. Del Prato S, Barnett AH, Huisman H, et al. Effect of linagliptin monotherapy on glycaemic control and markers of beta-cell function in patients with inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes: a randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2011;13(3):258-267.
72. Leibowitz G, Cahn A, Bhatt DL, et al. Impact of treatment with saxagliptin on glycaemic stability and beta-cell function in the SAVOR-TIMI 53 study. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2015;17(5):487-494.
73. Henry RR, Smith SR, Schwartz SL, et al. Effects of saxagliptin on beta-cell stimulation and insulin secretion in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2011;13(9):850-858.
74. DeFronzo RA, Hissa MN, Garber AJ, et al. The efficacy and safety of saxagliptin when added to metformin therapy in patients with inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes on metformin alone. *Diabetes Care*. 2009;32(9):1649-1655.
75. Nauck M. Incretin therapies: highlighting common features and differences in the modes of action of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2016;18(3):203-216.
76. White WB, Cannon CP, Heller SR, et al. Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(14):1327-1335.
77. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, et al. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(14):1317-1326.
78. Green JB, Bethel MA, Armstrong PW, et al. Effect of sitagliptin on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(3):232-242.
79. US Food and Drug Administration. Diabetes medications containing saxagliptin and alogliptin: Drug safety communication- Risk of heart failure. http://www.fda.gov/Safety/MedWatch/SafetyInformation/SafetyAlertsforHumanMedicalProducts/ucm494252.htm. Published 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
80. Azoulay L, Filion KB, Platt RW, et al. Association between incretin-based drugs and the risk of acute pancreatitis. *JAMA Intern Med*. 2016;176(10):1464-1473.
81. Thomsen RW, Pedersen L, Moller N, et al. Incretin-based therapy and risk of acute pancreatitis: a nationwide population-based case-control study. *Diabetes Care*. 2015;38(6):1089-1098.
82. Giorda CB, Sacerdote C, Nada E, et al. Incretin-based therapies and acute pancreatitis risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. *Endocrine*. 2015;48(2):461-471.
83. Tkáč I, Raz I. Combined analysis of three large interventional trials with gliptins indicates increased incidence of acute pancreatitis in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*. 2017;40(2):284-286.
84. Lavalle Gonzalez FJ, Januszewicz A, Davidson J, et al. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin compared with placebo and sitagliptin in patients with type 2 diabetes on background metformin monotherapy: a randomised trial. *Diabetologia*. 2013;56(12):2582-2592.
85. Cefalu WT, Leiter LA, Yoon KH, et al. Efficacy and safety of canagliflozin versus glimepiride in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with metformin (CANTATA-SU): 52 week results from a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 non-inferiority trial. *Lancet*. 2013;382(9896):941-950.
86. Bailey CJ, Gross JL, Hennicken D, et al. Dapagliflozin add-on to metformin in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with metformin: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled 102-week trial. *BMC Med*. 2013;11:43.
87. Nauck MA, Del Prato S, Meier JJ, et al. Dapagliflozin versus glipizide as add-on therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes who have inadequate glycemic control with metformin: a randomized, 52-week, double-blind, active-controlled noninferiority trial. *Diabetes Care*. 2011;34(9):2015-2022.
88. Ridderstråle M, Andersen KR, Zeller C, et al. Comparison of empagliflozin and glimepiride as add-on to metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes: a 104-week randomised, active-controlled, double-blind, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol*. 2014;2(9):691-700.
89. Frías JP, Guja C, Hardy E, et al. Exenatide once weekly plus dapagliflozin once daily versus exenatide or dapagliflozin alone in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with metformin monotherapy (DURATION-8): a 28 week, multicentre, double-blind, phase 3, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol*. 2016;4(12):1004-1016.
90. Merovci A, Mari A, Solis C, et al. Dapagliflozin lowers plasma glucose concentration and improves beta-cell function. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2015;100(5):1927-1932.
91. Polidori D, Mari A, Ferrannini E. Canagliflozin, a sodium glucose co-transporter 2 inhibitor, improves model-based indices of beta cell function in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetologia*. 2014;57(5):891-901.
92. Ferrannini E, Muscelli E, Frascerra S, et al. Metabolic response to sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibition in type 2 diabetic patients. *J Clin Invest*. 2014;124(2):499-508.
93. Leiter LA, Yoon KH, Arias P, et al. Canagliflozin provides durable glycemic improvements and body weight reduction over 104 weeks versus glimepiride in patients with type 2 diabetes on metformin: a randomized, double-blind, phase 3 study. *Diabetes Care*. 2015;38(3):355-364.
94. Nauck MA, Del Prato S, Duran-Garcia S, et al. Durability of glycaemic efficacy over 2 years with dapagliflozin versus glipizide as add-on therapies in patients whose type 2 diabetes mellitus is inadequately controlled with metformin. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2014;16(11):1111-1120.
95. Bolinder J, Ljunggren Ö, Johansson L, et al. Dapagliflozin maintains glycaemic control while reducing weight and body fat mass over 2 years in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled on metformin. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2014;16(2):159-169.
96. Del Prato S, Nauck M, Durán-Garcia S, et al. Long-term glycaemic response and tolerability of dapagliflozin versus a sulphonylurea as add-on therapy to metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes: 4-year data. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2015;17(6):581-590.
97. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA revises label of diabetes drug canagliflozin (Invokana, Invokamet) to include updates on bone fracture risk and new information on decreased bone mineral density. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm461449.htm. Updated January 15, 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
98. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA revises labels of SGLT2 inhibitors for diabetes to include warnings about too much acid in the blood and seriour urinary tract infections. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm475463.htm. Updated January 15, 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
99. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA strengthens kidney warnings for diabetes medicines canagliflozin (Invokana, Invokamet), and dapagliflozin (Farxiga, Xigduo XR). http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm505860.htm. Updated June 17, 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
100. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: Interim clinical trial results find increased risk of leg and foot amputations, mostly affecting the toes, with the diabetes medicine canagliflozin (Invokana, Invokamet); FDA to investigate. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm500965.htm. Updated May 31, 2016. Accessed February 6, 2017.
101. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(22):2117-2128.
102. Ratner RE, Gough SC, Mathieu C, et al. Hypoglycaemia risk with insulin degludec compared with insulin glargine in type 2 and type 1 diabetes: a pre-planned meta-analysis of phase 3 trials. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2013;15(2):175-184.
103. Ritzel R, Roussel R, Bolli GB, et al. Patient-level meta-analysis of the EDITION 1, 2 and 3 studies: glycaemic control and hypoglycaemia with new insulin glargine 300 U/ml versus glargine 100 U/ml in people with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Obes Metab*. 2015;17(9):859-867.
104. Rosenstock J, Hansen L, Zee P, et al. Dual add-on therapy in type 2 diabetes poorly controlled with metformin monotherapy: a randomized double-blind trial of saxagliptin plus dapagliflozin addition versus single addition of saxagliptin or dapagliflozin to metformin. *Diabetes Care*. 2015;38(3):376-383.
105. DeFronzo RA, Burant CF, Fleck P, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of the DPP-4 inhibitor alogliptin combined with pioglitazone, in metformin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab*. 2012;97(5):1615-1622.
106. DeFronzo RA, Lewin A, Patel S, et al. Combination of empagliflozin and linagliptin as second-line therapy in subjects with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled on metformin. *Diabetes Care*. 2015;38(3):384-393.

# Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia: Is There Anything New?

Hans Liu, MD, FACP

## INTRODUCTION

The management of patients with community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) is an ongoing challenge in the primary care setting. This is due, in part, to the fact that management guidelines in the United States were published nearly a decade ago. Furthermore, there has been a dearth of new treatments. But that may be about to change. Management guidelines are being updated by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and the American Thoracic Society (ATS) and are expected to be released this summer. In addition, several new antibiotics for the treatment of CAP are on the horizon.

## EPIDEMIOLOGY

*Streptococcus pneumoniae* has been considered the leading bacterial cause of CAP. However, recent studies have shown variability in how often *S pneumoniae* is isolated from patients with pneumonia.[1,2] The introduction of the 7-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV7) in 2000 for children, and the 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13) in 2010 for children, immunocompromised adults, and adults ages 65 years or older has had a significant impact on the incidence of related infections. One multicenter study showed a 16% to 32% decrease in cases of CAP in children and infants following introduction of PCV13.[3] Invasive pneumococcal disease rates have also decreased among unvaccinated older children, adults, and the elderly—particularly contacts of vaccine recipients, suggesting herd immunity protective effects.[4]

However, CAP continues to be a concern, particularly among older adults, with an estimated 950,000 cases per year in adults younger than 65 years and 1.3 million cases per year in adults 65 years or older.[5,6] Pneumonia is currently the leading cause of infection-related death and, combined with influenza, is the 8th leading cause of death in the United States.[7] Furthermore, individuals with CAP have a greater 10-year mortality compared with controls (hazard ratio, 1.65; average age 59 years in a case-control study).[8]

Morbidity in the adult population is associated with significant duration of illness (average 31.8 days and 10.2 days per inpatient episode and outpatient episode, respectively), and overall health care cost (approximately $11,000 to $51,000 and $1,000 to $5,600 per inpatient episode and outpatient episode, respectively).[9] CAP in adults ages 50 years or older is also associated with significant absenteeism and decreased work productivity.[10] Primary care physicians carry much of the burden of CAP diagnosis and treatment because approximately 72% of CAP episodes are managed on an outpatient basis.[9]

## ETIOLOGY AND PATHOGEN SUSCEPTIBILITY

Among the challenges of outpatient management of CAP is the lack of a confirmed etiologic diagnosis to guide initial treatment. Even with the use of current laboratory diagnostic testing, no pathogen was detected in 62% of 2259 hospitalized patients with radiographic evidence of CAP in a surveillance study in 5 US hospitals.[11] Another recent study of patients hospitalized with CAP (N=323) in the United Kingdom reported a much higher detection rate, identifying a pathogen in 87%.[2] While reasons for the difference in the detection rates between the 2 studies are not clear, possible reasons for the low detection rate include an inability to obtain a good diagnostic specimen, insensitive diagnostic tests for known pathogens, or lack of available rapid testing for some viruses and other respiratory pathogens.

A key management challenge is the wide variety of potential pathogens and variability from site to site, as well as the impact of antibiotic use on pathogen detection. Among causative pathogens for CAP identified in the US study, human rhinovirus was the most common, followed by influenza A or B.[11] *Streptococcus pneumoniae* remained the leading bacterial cause of CAP, accounting for 5% of all pathogens detected and 37.6% with an identified bacterial

**Hans Liu, MD, FACP,** Infectious Disease Specialist, Director of Antimicrobial Stewardship, Bryn Mawr Hospital, Professor of Medicine, Sidney Kimmel School of Medicine, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, PA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Liu discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Cempra, Inc.; and Daiichi Sankyo Company, Ltd.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Cempra, Inc.

pathogen.[11] In the UK study, *Haemophilus influenzae* and *S pneumoniae* were the most common bacteria identified, detected in 40% and 36% of patients with CAP, respectively. Rhinovirus was the most common virus identified; it was detected in 13% of patients with CAP.[2] Other bacterial causes of CAP include *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *Staphylococcus aureus* (typically occurring after influenza infection, and increasingly involving methicillin-resistant *S aureus* [MRSA]), and Group A streptococci, as well as the "atypical" bacterial pathogens: *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, and *Legionella* species.[12,13] Improvements in diagnostic techniques allowing for better identification of viruses and fastidious bacteria have resulted in a smaller percentage of CAP cases now being attributed to typical bacterial pathogens.[12]

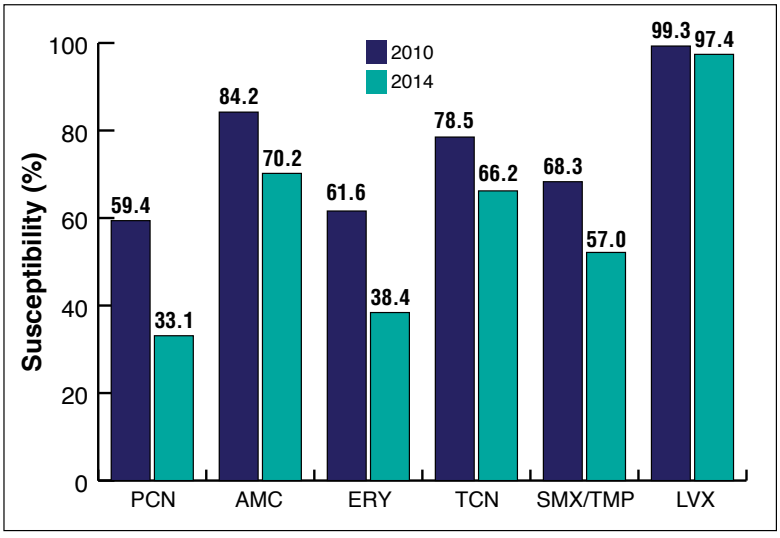
The percentage of outpatients with *S pneumoniae* identified as the pathogen is higher than in inpatients. A meta-analysis of 46 studies published from 1990 through 2007 indicates that *S pneumoniae* was the pathogen in 38% of outpatients in Europe.[14] Another multinational study conducted from 2013 to 2014 involving 860 patients (mostly outpatients) with CAP showed that *S pneumoniae* was the causative pathogen in 24%.[15]

Another challenge to CAP management is the increasing incidence of antibiotic resistance among common bacterial pathogens. Between 2010 and 2014, *S pneumoniae* resistance rates increased markedly for penicillin and macrolides; somewhat less so for amoxicillin/clavulanate, tetracycline, and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole; and negligibly for the fluoroquinolone levofloxacin (**FIGURE**).[16] *S pneumoniae* resistance to macrolides is widespread and concentrated particularly along the East Coast and the Southwest parts of the United States, with rates up to 60%.[17] This is of particular concern because macrolides are considered a first-line empiric treatment for CAP.[13]

Ceftriaxone, another antibacterial agent commonly used in the hospital and emergency department for bacterial CAP, also has been subject to some reduction in activity against *S pneumoniae*, with susceptibility rates decreasing from 97.4% to 87.5% between 1998 and 2009.[18] *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, which typically produces a mild "walking" pneumonia, has demonstrated increasing resistance to macrolide antibiotics (likely associated with the widespread use of azithromycin), with wide geographic variability, ranging from 7% in Seattle to 50% in New Jersey.[19]

Because the epidemiology of pathogens and resistance patterns are associated with large geographical variations, knowledge of local etiology and susceptibility patterns is crucial for the appropriate choice of empiric antimicrobial treatment for CAP.[20] Primary care physicians can consult with their local public health department or local infectious disease specialist to determine resistance patterns in their communities.

**FIGURE Susceptibility of *S pneumoniae* to selected antibiotics, 2010-2014, United States[16]**




**Abbreviations:** AMC, amoxicillin-clavulanate; ERY, erythromycin; LVX, levofloxacin; PCN, penicillin; SMX/TMP, sulfamethoxazole/trimethoprim; *S pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*; TCN, tetracycline.

## DEFINITION

The common role of viruses and bacteria and less-common role of fungi in the etiology of CAP has contributed to difficulties in diagnosis and treatment, and underscores the importance of differentiating among the types of pathogens. In 2014, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) developed a definition of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia (CABP) to be applied to clinical studies in the development of drugs to treat CABP.[21]

*CABP is an acute bacterial infection of the pulmonary parenchyma that is:*

- *associated with chest pain, cough, sputum production, difficulty breathing, chills, rigors, fever, or hypotension, and is*
- *accompanied by the presence of a new lobar or multilobar infiltrate on a chest radiograph.*

## RISK STRATIFICATION AND DIAGNOSTICS

Possibly the most important clinical decision made by the physician in the management of patients with CAP is

**TABLE 1** Comparison of care recommendations based on PSI vs CURB-65 scores[22,23]

| PSI risk class* | No. of points | Mortality (%) | Recommended site of care |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | —[a] | 0.1 | Outpatient |
| II | ≤70 | 0.6 | Outpatient |
| III | 71-90 | 2.8 | Outpatient or brief inpatient |
| IV | 91-130 | 8.2 | Inpatient |
| V | >130 | 29.2 | Inpatient; consider ICU |
| CURB-65 Score† | 0 or 1 | <3 | Likely suitable for home treatment |
| | 2 | 9 | Consider hospital-supervised treatment[b] |
| | 3-5 | 15-40 | Inpatient[c] |

**Abbreviations:** CURB, confusion, urea nitrogen, respiratory rate, blood pressure, 65 years of age and older; ICU, intensive care unit; PSI, Pneumonia Severity Index.

[a]Absence of risk factors.

[b]Options may include short inpatient stay or hospital-supervised outpatient.

[c]Assess for ICU admission, especially if CURB-65 score=4 or 5.



whether to treat as an inpatient or outpatient, as this has a direct impact on the intensity of laboratory evaluation, location and type of antibiotic therapy, and costs.[22] Two instruments that help guide this decision utilize risk factors to predict mortality risk; the **P**neumonia **S**everity **I**ndex (PSI), also called the **P**neumonia **P**atient **O**utcomes **R**esearch **T**eam (PORT) Severity Index, is used in the United States, and the CURB-65 (**C**onfusion, **U**rea nitrogen, **R**espiratory rate, **B**lood pressure, 65 years of age and older) pneumonia severity score is more commonly used in the United Kingdom and Asia (**TABLE 1**).[22,23] The PSI puts patients in risk classes (I-V) based on age, comorbidities (neoplastic disease, liver disease, congestive heart failure, cerebrovascular disease, or renal disease), vital signs, mental status, gender, nursing home residence, and laboratory and radiographic findings.[22] The CURB-65 score assigns points for **c**onfusion, blood **u**rea >19 mg/dL, **r**espiratory rate ≥30 min, **b**lood pressure <90 mm Hg (systolic) or ≤60 mm Hg (diastolic), and age ≥65 years.[23]

Given the costs and time associated with most diagnostic tests for CAP, investigators have studied the value of signs and symptoms and comorbidities to differentiate between bacterial, viral, and mixed etiologies.[24] Although several variables have been independently associated with a pathogen group (cough with viral etiology, elevated C-reactive protein with bacterial etiology, immunodeficiency with mixed bacterial-viral etiology), substantial overlap and variability render these clinical predictors unreliable.[24]

The empirical outpatient management of the majority of patients with CAP has been hindered by the delay in, and the accuracy of, diagnosis associated with culture-based methods.[20] Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) analysis has emerged as a more rapid diagnostic technique that provides a result within 1 day. PCR testing has improved pathogen detection over culture-based methods (87% vs 39% in a study of 323 patients) and is less likely to be negatively affected by antibiotic administration prior to sampling.[25] While PCR testing helps differentiate viral from bacterial etiology, insurance coverage may not pay for the cost and patients might not wish to wait the short time needed for the result. Moreover, waiting for PCR test results would not be appropriate if a patient's clinical presentation already warranted hospital admission. Urinary antigen testing for *Legionella pneumophila* and *S pneumoniae* is a consideration in critically ill patients with CAP.[13]

Urinary antigen testing, notably for *S pneumoniae* and *Legionella* species, is readily accessible and provides rapid turnaround time (about 1 day) and reasonable sensitivity and good specificity.[26,27] However, current guidelines do not provide clear recommendations regarding appropriate situations in which testing should be performed. Urinary antigen testing is often used by emergency medicine and other admitting providers. Although I have not had good experience with either urinary antigen test in patients with CAP, it is another way of looking for an etiologic diagnosis in patients with CAP who have already received antibiotics.

## CURRENT OUTPATIENT TREATMENT OF CAP

The 2007 IDSA/ATS guidelines recommend broad-spectrum coverage for many patients with CABP, including those with

comorbidities or other risks for drug-resistant *S pneumoniae*. Although the 2007 IDSA/ATS guidelines recommend specific classes of antibacterial agents for empiric therapy, subsequent studies and meta-analyses have failed to demonstrate a clearly superior regimen among various monotherapy and combination therapy regimens.[28-35]

It is noteworthy that, despite a significant increase in macrolide resistance in some regions, which was a concern at the time the IDSA/ATS guidelines were developed, macrolides still play an important role in CAP therapy (in part because of their coverage of atypical respiratory pathogens).[13] This underscores the importance of determining local resistance patterns to guide treatment, particularly empiric treatment. Doxycycline may be an appropriate alternative for patients with mild symptoms and a high likelihood of an atypical pathogen, but many clinicians feel it is not sufficient for very ill patients due to increasing resistance in key bacterial pathogens.[36]

The use of oxygen saturation in managing patients with CAP in the outpatient setting is not well studied, although some evidence suggests that oxygen saturation <92% is associated with major adverse events.[37] However, outpatients with CAP who have a low oxygen saturation, regardless of the cause, understandably may need more intensive management.

Nonresponsiveness to treatment is yet another challenge in the empiric management of patients with CAP in the primary care setting. In a 2016 retrospective analysis of 250 adults with CAP (the majority of whom had chest x-rays) who were originally diagnosed in an outpatient facility by a primary care provider, 34% were considered nonresponsive to empiric therapy, ie, they failed to respond to antibiotic therapy. This resulted in worsening symptoms or delayed achievement of clinical stability.[38] Predictors of nonresponse were being a former smoker (odds ratio [OR], 2.27; $P<.01$), initial presentation to urgent care (OR, 2.10; $P=.02$), and myalgia (OR, 2.79; $P=.003$). Given the frequent association of myalgia with influenza, it is possible that the study population included a large proportion of patients with primary viral pneumonia expected to be unresponsive to antibacterial therapy.[38] However, lack of response to treatment makes it difficult for the health care provider to decide about maintaining, changing, or discontinuing current therapy.

## COLLATERAL DAMAGE

Another challenge in CAP treatment is managing collateral damage. This term typically refers to the ecological adverse effects of antibiotic therapy, ie, the selection of drug-resistant organisms and the unwanted development of colonization or infection with multidrug-resistant organisms (eg, *Clostridium difficile* colitis or antibiotic-associated diarrhea).[39] Collateral damage may also encompass other unintended, serious consequences of antibiotic therapy. For example, the FDA recently strengthened warnings regarding the serious risks for tendinopathy, peripheral neuropathy, and central nervous system effects associated with fluoroquinolones.[40,41]

Approximately 3 years ago, the FDA strengthened warnings regarding the risk of QT interval prolongation and torsades de pointes with the macrolide azithromycin.[42] The possibility of collateral damage and other adverse events are considerations in treatment selection.

## "STATE OF THE ART" IN CABP/CAP MANAGEMENT

In light of current information on epidemiology, antibiotic resistance patterns, risk factors for poor outcomes, and available diagnostic tools and antibiotics, the following is a "state-of-the-art" approach I recommend for the management of CAP:

1. Make a preliminary diagnosis based on symptomatic presentation.
2. Consider risk factors for poor outcomes, eg, older age, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, heart failure, smoking.
3. Consider acquiring specimens for laboratory analysis (complete blood count and metabolic panel, chest x-ray, sputum or other cultures) if:
    a. on first visit, patient presents in poor health or with risk factors for poor outcomes, or
    b. on follow-up visit, the patient is not improving or is getting worse.
4. Determine outpatient vs in-hospital management based on PSI or CURB-65.
5. Determine if an antibiotic is needed and, if so, which one(s)?
    a. Healthy host, not severely ill, probably self-limited viral etiology, no antimicrobial needed.
    b. For a relatively healthy adult with cough and chest discomfort that may indicate viral pneumonitis or atypical respiratory infection (usually mycoplasma), consider a macrolide or doxycycline.
    c. If a bacterial pathogen is suspected or the patient is ill or at risk for poor outcome AND considering local resistance patterns:
        i. consider a macrolide or doxycycline for narrow coverage
        ii. consider amoxicillin-clavulanate or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for broader coverage, or
        iii. consider a fluoroquinolone or a macrolide + ß-lactam for broad-spectrum coverage.

## NEW ANTIBIOTICS FOR CABP ON THE HORIZON

Only 2 new antibiotics have become available in the United States for the treatment of bacterial pneumonia since the publication of the 2007 IDSA/ATS guidelines. One is tigecycline, the first drug in the glycylcycline class of antibiotics, and the other is ceftaroline fosamil, a broad-spectrum cephalosporin. Both are administered parenterally and are expensive, with limited potential for the treatment of patients with CABP who do not require prolonged hospitalization.

There are several antibiotics in late-stage development for the treatment of patients with CABP (**TABLE 2**[36,43-51]). Omadacycline is an oral and intravenous tetracycline with potent activity comparable to tigecycline against resistant Gram-positive bacteria, including *S pneumoniae* and MRSA.[43,44] Omadacycline has good oral bioavailability and is not associated with significant nausea or vomiting.[45]

Lefamulin is an oral and intravenous pleuromutilin antibiotic with potent activity against multidrug-resistant strains of *S pneumoniae* and macrolide-sensitive and macrolide-resistant *M pneumoniae*.[46,47] Lefamulin has been granted qualified infectious disease product/fast-track status by the FDA, and patients with moderate/severe CABP are being enrolled in phase 3 Lefamulin Evaluation Against Pneumonia-1 (LEAP-1) and LEAP-2 trials comparing lefamulin with moxifloxacin with or without linezolid [NCT02559310 and NCT02813694].

Solithromycin is an oral and intravenous 4th-generation macrolide that is highly active against macrolide-resistant *S pneumoniae*, *M catarrhalis*, and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*.[36,48] Solithromycin is less active (1 tube dilution) than azithromycin against *H influenzae*, but has good activity against *S aureus*, including MRSA.[36] In patients with moderate/moderately severe CABP, solithromycin demonstrated noninferiority vs levofloxacin and moxifloxacin in achieving symptom response at 72 hours.[49-51]

## IMPLICATIONS FOR PRIMARY CARE PRACTICE

CAP remains a significant cause of morbidity and mortality in the United States, incurring a high use of health care resources. In the current era of cost containment, standards-driven care, and concerns about antibiotic resistance, there is great interest in using targeted-spectrum therapy, balancing the risks of therapy (including adverse events) with likelihood of success, and avoiding relapse and hospitalization.

Advances in diagnostic testing have led to a new appreciation of a wider array of pathogens involved in CAP—notably viruses, some of which are treatable (eg, influenza). Pathogen susceptibility is changing (eg, *S pneumoniae*, mycoplasma), requiring physicians to remain up to date on local resistance patterns to guide empiric treatment. Additionally, after a dearth of new antibiotics over the last decade for CABP, several are on the horizon. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Jain S, Self WH, Wunderink RG, et al. Community-acquired pneumonia requiring hospitalization among U.S. adults. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(5):415-427.
2. Gadsby NJ, Russell CD, McHugh MP, et al. Comprehensive molecular testing for respiratory pathogens in community-acquired pneumonia. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2016;62(7):817-823.
3. Angoulvant F, Levy C, Grimprel E, et al. Early impact of 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine on community-acquired pneumonia in children. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2014;58(7):918-924.
4. Millar EV, Watt JP, Bronsdon MA, et al. Indirect effect of 7-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine on pneumococcal colonization among unvaccinated household members. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2008;47(8):989-996.
5. Bonafede MM, Suaya JA, Wilson KL, et al. Incidence and cost of CAP in a large working-age population. *Am J Manag Care.* 2012;18(7):380-387.
6. Yu H, Rubin J, Dunning S, et al. Clinical and economic burden of community-acquired pneumonia in the Medicare fee-for-service population. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2012;60(11):2137-2143.
7. Xu J, Murphy SL, Kochanek KD, Bastian BA. Deaths: final data for 2013. *Nat Vital Stat Rep.* 2016;64(2):1-119.
8. Eurich DT, Marrie TJ, Minhas-Sandhu JK, Majumdar SR. Ten-year mortality after community-acquired pneumonia. A prospective cohort. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2015;192(5):597-604.


**TABLE 2 Antibiotics on the horizon for community-acquired bacterial pneumonia[36,43-51]**

| Agent | Omadacycline | Lefamulin | Solithromycin |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Class** | Tetracycline | Pleuromutilin | 4th-generation macrolide |
| **Stage of development** | Early phase 3 | Early phase 3 | FDA issued complete response letter in December 2016 requiring further safety investigations. |
| **Pathogens covered** | Resistant Gram-positive bacteria, including *S pneumoniae* and MRSA | Multi-drug-resistant strains of *S pneumoniae*, macrolide-sensitive and macrolide-resistant *M pneumoniae* | Macrolide-resistant *S pneumoniae* and *M pneumoniae*, *M catarrhalis*; good activity against *S aureus*, including community-acquired MRSA |
| **Route of administration** | Oral and IV | Oral and IV | Oral and IV |

**Abbreviations:** FDA, US Food and Drug Administration; IV, intravenous; *M catarrhalis*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*; *M pneumoniae*, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; PDUFA, Prescription Drug User Fee Act; *S aureus*, *Staphylococcus aureus*; *S pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

9. Sato R, Gomez Rey G, Nelson S, Pinsky B. Community-acquired pneumonia episode costs by age and risk in commercially insured US adults aged ≥50 years. *Appl Health Econ Health Policy*. 2013;11(3):251-258.
10. Wyrwich KW, Yu H, Sato R, Powers JH. Observational longitudinal study of symptom burden and time for recovery from community-acquired pneumonia reported by older adults surveyed nationwide using the CAP Burden of Illness Questionnaire. *Patient Relat Outcome Meas.* 2015;6:215-223.
11. Jain S, Self WH, Wunderink RG, et al; CDC Epic Study Team. Community-acquired pneumonia requiring hospitalization among U.S. adults. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(5):415-427.
12. Baer SL, Vazquez JA, Colombo RE. Medscape. Community-acquired pneumonia (CAP). http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/234240-overview. Updated July 25, 2016. Accessed January 27, 2017.
13. Mandell LA, Wunderink RG, Anzueto A, et al. Infectious Diseases Society of America/American Thoracic Society Consensus Guidelines on the Management of Community-acquired Pneumonia in Adults. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2007;44(suppl 2): S27-S72.
14. Welte T, Torres A, Nathwani D. Clinical and economic burden of community-acquired pneumonia among adults in Europe. *Thorax.* 2012;67(1):71-79.
15. Barrera CM, Mykietiuk A, Metev H, et al; for the SOLITAIRE-ORAL Pneumonia Team Efficacy and safety of oral solithromycin versus oral moxifloxacin for treatment of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia: a global, double-blind, multicentre, randomised, active-controlled, non-inferiority trial (SOLITAIRE-ORAL). *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2016;16(4):421-430.
16. Flamm RK, Rhomberg PR, Huband MD, Farrell DJ. Activity of omadacycline tested against *Streptococcus pneumoniae* from a global surveillance program [abstract C-554]. Paper presented at: 55th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy and 28th International Congress of Chemotherapy meeting; September 19, 2015; San Diego, CA.
17. Macrolide-resistant Streptococcus penumoniae, United States, 2012. The Center for Disease Dynamics, Economics & Policy. https://resistancemap.cddep.org/CountryPageSub.php?countryId=38&country=United+States. Published 2012. Accessed January 27, 2017.
18. Viasus D, Garcia-Vidal C, Carratalà J. Advances in antibiotic therapy for community-acquired pneumonia. *Curr Opin Pulm Med.* 2013;19(3):209-215.
19. Zheng X, Lee S, Selvarangan R, et al. Macrolide-resistant *mycoplasma pneumoniae*, United States. *Emerg Infect Dis.* 2015;21(8):1470-1472.
20. Holter JC, Müller F, Bjørang O, et al. Etiology of community-acquired pneumonia and diagnostic yields of microbiological methods: a 3-year prospective study in Norway. *BMC Infect Dis.* 2015;15:64. doi: 10.1186/s12879-015-0803-5.
21. Guidance for Industry: Community-Acquired Bacterial Pneumonia: Developing Drugs for Treatment. US Department of Health and Human Services, US Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm123686.pdf. Published 2014. Accessed January 27, 2017.
22. Bartlett JG, Dowell SF, Mandell LA, et al. Practice guidelines for the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Infectious Diseases Society of America. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2000;31(2):347-382.
23. Lim WS, Baudouin SV, George RC, et al; Pneumonia Guidelines Committee of the BTS Standards of Care Committee. British Thoracic Society guidelines for the management of community acquired pneumonia in adults: update 2009. *Thorax.* 2009;64(suppl 3):iii1-iii55.
24. Huijskens EG, Koopmans M, Palmen FMH, et al. The value of signs and symptoms in differentiating between bacterial, viral and mixed aetiology in patients with community-acquired pneumonia. *J Med Microbiol.* 2014;63(Pt 3):441-452.
25. Gadsby NJ, Russell CD, McHugh MP, et al. Comprehensive molecular testing for respiratory pathogens in community-acquired pneumonia. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2016;62(7):817-823.
26. Couturier MR, Graf EH, Griffin AT. Urine antigen tests for the diagnosis of respiratory infections: legionellosis, histoplasmosis, pneumococcal pneumonia. *Clin Lab Med.* 2014;34(2):219-236.
27. Sordé R, Falcó V, Lowak M, et al. Current and potential usefulness of pneumococcal urinary antigen detection in hospitalized patients with community-acquired pneumonia to guide antimicrobial therapy. *Arch Intern Med.* 2011;171(2):166-172.
28. Nie W, Li B, Xiu Q. ßeta-lactam/macrolide dual therapy versus ß-lactam monotherapy for the treatment of community-acquired pneumonia in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Antimicrob Chemother.* 2014;69(6):1441-1446.
29. Postma DF, van Werkhoven CH, van Elden LJ, et al; CAP-START Study Group. Antibiotic treatment strategies for community-acquired pneumonia in adults. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;372(14):1312-1323.
30. Lodise TP, Kwa A, Cosler L, et al. Comparison of beta-lactam and macrolide combination therapy versus fluoroquinolone monotherapy in hospitalized Veterans Affairs patients with community-acquired pneumonia. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2007;51(11):3977-3982.
31. Raz-Pasteur A, Shasha D, Paul M. Fluoroquinolones or macrolides alone versus combined with ß-lactams for adults with community-acquired pneumonia: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Antimicrob Agents.* 2015;46(3): 242-248.
32. Skalsky K, Yahav D, Lador A, et al. Macrolides vs. quinolones for community-acquired pneumonia: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Clin Microbiol Infect.* 2013;19(4):370-378.
33. Asadi L, Sligl WI, Eurich DT, et al. Macrolide-based regimens and mortality in hospitalized patients with community-acquired pneumonia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2012;55(3):371-380.
34. Ambroggio L, Test M, Metlay JP, et al. Beta-lactam versus beta-lactam/macrolide therapy in pediatric outpatient pneumonia. *Pediatr Pulmonol.* 2016;51(5): 541-548.
35. Ambroggio L, Test M, Metlay JP, et al. Comparative effectiveness of beta-lactam versus macrolide monotherapy in children with pneumonia diagnosed in the outpatient setting. *Pediatr Infect Dis J.* 2015;34(8):839-842.
36. Farrell DJ, Flamm RK, Sader HS, Jones RN. Results from the Solithromycin International Surveillance Program (2014). *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2016;60 (6):3662-3668.
37. Majumdar SR, Eurich DT, Gamble JM, et al. Oxygen saturations less than 92% are associated with major adverse events in outpatients with pneumonia: a population-based cohort study. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2011;52(3):325-331.
38. Vander Wyst KB, Kram JJF, Baumgardner DJ. Clinical approach to nonresponsive pneumonia in adults diagnosed by a primary care clinician: aretrospective study. *J Patient Cent Res Rev.* 2016;3(2):79-89.
39. Paterson DL. "Collateral damage" from cephalosporin or quinolone antibiotic therapy. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2004;38(suppl 4):S341-S345.
40. FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA advises restricting fluoroquinolone antibiotic use for certain uncomplicated infections; warns about disabling side effects that can occur together. US Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm500143.htm. Published 2016. Accessed January 27, 2017.
41. FDA Drug Safety Communication: FDA updates warnings for oral and injectable fluoroquinolone antibiotics due to disabling side effects. US Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm511530.htm. Published 2016. Accessed January 27, 2017.
42. FDA Drug Safety Communication: Azithromycin (Zithromax or Zmax) and the risk of potentially fatal heart rhythms. US Food and Drug Administration. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DrugSafety/UCM343347.pdf. Published 2013. Accessed January 27, 2017.
43. Draper MP, Weir S, Macone A, et al. Mechanism of action of the novel aminomethylcycline antibiotic omadacycline. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2014;58 (3):1279-1283.
44. Macone AB, Caruso BK, Leahy RG, et al. *In vitro* and *in vivo* antibacterial activities of omadacycline, a novel aminomethylcycline. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2014;58(2):1127-1135.
45. Honeyman L, Ismail M, Nelson ML, et al. Structure-activity relationship of the aminomethylcyclines and the discovery of omadacycline. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2015;59(11):7044-7053.
46. Mendes RE, Farrell DJ, Flamm RK, et al. In vitro activity of lefamulin tested against Streptococcus pneumoniae with defined serotypes,including multidrug-resistant isolates causing lower respiratory tract infections in the United States. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2016;60(7):4407-4411.
47. Waites K, Crabb DM, Duffy LB, et al. *In vitro* activity of lefamulin against macrolide-susceptible (Msmp) and macrolide-resistant *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (Mrmp) from the United States, Europe, and China. Paper presented at: American Society for Microbiology 2016 Scientific Program; June 19, 2016; Boston, MA.
48. Farrell DJ, Mendes RE, Jones RN. Antimicrobial activity of solithromycin against serotyped macrolide-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae* isolates collected from U.S. medical centers in 2012. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2015;59(4): 2432-2434.
49. Oldach D, Clark K, Schranz J, et al. Randomized, double-blind, multicenter phase 2 study comparing the efficacy and safety of oral solithromycin (CEM-101) to those of oral levofloxacin in the treatment of patients with community-acquired bacterial pneumonia. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother.* 2013;57(6):2526-2534.
50. Barrera CM, Mykietiuk A, Metev H, et al. Efficacy and safety of oral solithromycin versus oral moxifloxacin for treatment of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia: a global, double-blind, multicentre, randomised, active-controlled, non-inferiority trial (SOLITAIRE-ORAL). *Lancet Infect Dis.* 2016;16(4):421-430.
51. File TM, Jr, Rewerska B, Vucinic-Mihailovic V, et al; for the SOLITAIRE-IV Pneumonia Team. SOLITAIRE-IV: A randomized, double-blind, multicenter study comparing the efficacy and safety of intravenous-to-oral solithromycin to intravenous-to-oral moxifloxacin for treatment of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2016;63(8):1007-1016.

# Cardiovascular Safety of Medications for Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

Javed Butler, MD, MPH, MBA

## INTRODUCTION

Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) is an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease, conferring about a twofold greater risk for a wide range of cardiovascular diseases.[1] Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death among individuals with T2DM. Besides vascular events, which include myocardial infarction and stroke, patients with diabetes are at a high risk for developing heart failure and heart failure–related death, with a 15% increase in the risk of heart failure for every 1% increase in glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) above 7.5%.[2] While several studies have shown an association between HbA1c lowering and a reduction in microvascular adverse events, including retinopathy and nephropathy, consistent results have not been seen between blood glucose control and either macrovascular disease risk or cardiovascular mortality.[3]

The potential cardiovascular benefits gained by lowering HbA1c were further tempered by a 2007 meta-analysis of rosiglitazone conducted by Nissen et al.[4] This meta-analysis of 42 clinical trials found an elevated risk for myocardial infarction with an odds ratio of 1.43 (95% confidence interval [CI], 1.03-1.98; *P*=.03) for rosiglitazone relative to the control group. The odds ratio for cardiovascular death was also elevated at 1.64 (95% CI, 0.98-2.74), although this did not reach statistical significance (*P*=.06). The results of this meta-analysis added to concerns from other trials regarding an increased risk for heart failure with pioglitazone[5,6] and rosiglitazone.[7] Although an increased risk of myocardial infarction with rosiglitazone was not corroborated in the RECORD (Rosiglitazone Evaluated for Cardiovascular Outcomes in Oral Agent Combination Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes) trial, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued a safety alert warning of the risk of myocardial infarction and cardiovascular death with rosiglitazone.[8-10] As a consequence, rather than targeting the potential for cardiovascular benefit, these data and the resulting FDA action led to a focus on the cardiovascular safety of antihyperglycemic medications. That impacted the subsequent design and conduct of clinical trials in patients with diabetes mellitus.

## FDA CARDIOVASCULAR RISK GUIDANCE

In 2008, the FDA took additional action related to cardiovascular safety of medications for treating T2DM by issuing the industry guidance *Diabetes Mellitus—Evaluating Cardiovascular Risk in New Antidiabetic Therapies to Treat Type 2 Diabetes*.[11] This guidance provided recommendations about how industry sponsors should demonstrate that a new antihyperglycemic agent to treat T2DM is not associated with an unacceptable increase in cardiovascular risk.

For new clinical trials, the guidance recommended the establishment of an independent cardiovascular endpoints committee to prospectively adjudicate cardiovascular events during phase 2 and 3 trials. The events to be assessed included major adverse cardiovascular events (MACE), among them cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and nonfatal stroke.[11] The clinical trials should include patients with T2DM at higher risk of cardiovascular events (eg, those with advanced disease, advanced age, or renal impairment), and be of sufficient duration to allow assessment of longer-term risks (minimum 2 years). The clinical trials should be designed so that a meta-analysis could be performed that accounts for important study design features and explores similarities and/or differences in patient subgroups, eg, age, sex, and race. A protocol describing the statistical methods and endpoints for the meta-analysis also needs to be provided.[11]

For the statistical comparison, the incidence of important cardiovascular events with the new antihyperglycemic medication is to be compared with a control group. If the upper limit of the two-sided 95% CI for the estimated risk ratio is less

**Javed Butler, MD, MPH, MBA,** Cardiology Division, Stony Brook University, Stony Brook, NY

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Butler discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Amgen; Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals Inc.; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; CardioCell LLC; Gilead Sciences, Inc.; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; Merck & Co., Inc.; Novartis Pharmaceuticals Corporation; Relypsa, Inc.; Stealth Biotherapeutics Inc.; Trevena, Inc.; and ZS Pharma, Inc.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

than 1.8, a determination of noninferiority can be made on an interim basis. Otherwise, an additional single, large safety trial should be conducted that alone, or added to other trials, would be able to satisfy the 1.8 upper limit. If the upper limit for the estimated risk ratio is between 1.3 and 1.8 and the overall risk-benefit analysis supports approval, a postmarketing trial is generally needed to definitively show that the upper limit of the two-sided 95% CI for the estimated risk ratio is less than 1.3.[11]

## TRADITIONAL CLINICAL OUTCOMES TRIALS VS DIABETES MEDICATION SAFETY TRIALS

The cardiovascular clinical trials of antihyperglycemic medications required by the 2008 FDA guidance are different from the traditional clinical trials that have been conducted to assess cardiovascular risk. In traditional clinical trials, the general goal is to establish that the cardiovascular risk of an active treatment is lower than the risk observed with a comparator (placebo or another active medication). That is, the trials need to demonstrate that the cardiovascular benefits of one treatment are superior to another.

In contrast, for trials of antihyperglycemic medications required by FDA, the goal is to demonstrate that the new antihyperglycemic medication is not associated with an unacceptable increase in cardiovascular risk compared with placebo as part of standard care in patients with T2DM. That is, the cardiovascular safety of the new antihyperglycemic medication is noninferior (ie, similar) to placebo as part of standard care. If noninferiority is demonstrated, the possible superiority of the new antihyperglycemic medication can then be assessed as well, but the primary aim is to prove safety. As noted earlier, major adverse cardiovascular events are the focus, although other endpoints that might be investigated include hospitalization for acute coronary syndrome, urgent revascularization, unstable angina, and heart failure.[11]

Patients in the diabetes medication safety trials are generally at higher cardiovascular risk since they are more likely to show benefit or harm over a short period of time. This heightened risk allows for rapid assessment of cardiovascular safety, and with logistically feasible follow-up, provides insights into longer-term cardiovascular risks or benefits.[12]

## RECENT CARDIOVASCULAR SAFETY TRIALS WITH ANTIHYPERGLYCEMIC MEDICATIONS

Sixteen large, randomized, double-blind, parallel, placebo-controlled, multicenter trials involving 145,000 participants have been initiated in accordance with the FDA guidance (**TABLE 1**). Of these, all but the Exenatide Study of Cardiovascular Event Lowering (EXSCEL) trial involved adults with T2DM and pre-existing cardiovascular disease or high risk for it. In EXSCEL, patients were not required to have pre-existing cardiovascular disease or high risk for it other than the risk incurred by a diagnosis of T2DM itself. Seven of these trials have been completed and their results published. The remaining 9 trials are expected to be completed by 2020.

### Completed Diabetes Medication Outcome Trials

The results from the 7 completed diabetes medication outcome trials demonstrated hazard ratios (HRs) for the primary endpoint of MACE ranging from 0.86 to 1.02, with the upper limit of the 95% CI below the 1.3 threshold for concern, which was the boundary identified for noninferiority (ie, cardiovascular safety threshold) in the FDA guidance (**TABLE 2**).[13-19] Thus, all 7 trials involving 3 different classes of medication, ie, dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor (DPP-4i), glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (GLP-1RA), and sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitor (SGLT-2i), have excluded an unacceptable level of cardiovascular risk as described in the 2008 FDA guidance.

While the demonstration of noninferiority for the primary composite endpoint in all 7 trials is reassuring regarding the cardiovascular safety of these 3 classes of medications, other data raised concerns regarding the DPP-4i class. Among these, the HRs for heart failure hospitalization varied among the DPP-4i class drugs, ranging from 1.00 for sitagliptin to 1.27 for saxagliptin, raising a potential concern for saxagliptin and a less-evident trend for alogliptin. It was, however, not entirely clear if saxagliptin and alogliptin actually increased the risk of heart failure hospitalization because the trials conducted under the 2008 FDA guidance had limited data collection for accurately assessing heart failure.[12] Since then, a retrospective, observational study of an insurance claims database demonstrated no association between heart failure hospitalization or several other cardiovascular outcomes and treatment with a DPP-4i agent relative to sulfonylurea therapy or treatment with saxagliptin relative to sitagliptin.[20] Nonetheless, these findings in the cardiovascular trials led the FDA to include a heart failure warning in the prescribing information for saxagliptin and alogliptin.[21,22]

While the focus of clinical trials required by the 2008 FDA guidance was safety, the HRs of the composite MACE primary endpoints observed in the empagliflozin, liraglutide, and semaglutide (investigational) trials demonstrated noninferiority; they also demonstrated superiority, each with an upper limit of the 95% CI less than 1.[16,18,19] For both empagliflozin and liraglutide, significant benefit was observed primarily for cardiovascular death, whereas the benefit with semaglutide was driven primarily by a reduction in nonfatal stroke (**TABLE 3**).[16,18,19] Differences in the magnitude of the beneficial effects observed in these trials are likely related to differences

**TABLE 1** **Cardiovascular outcome trials for new antihyperglycemic medications in type 2 diabetes mellitus**

| Medication | NCT # | Trial | Population | Estimated enrollment |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **SGLT-2 inhibitors** | | | | |
| Canagliflozin | 01032629 | CANVAS | M/F age ≥30 y w/CVD or age ≥50 y with high CV risk | 4331 |
| Canagliflozin | 01989754 | CANVAS-R | M/F age ≥30 y w/CVD or age ≥50y with high CV risk | 5813 |
| Canagliflozin | 02065791 | CREDENCE | M/F age ≥30y w/UACR >300 and ≤5000 mg/g | 4200 |
| Dapagliflozin | 01730534 | DECLARE-TIMI 58 | M/F age ≥40 y with high CVD risk | 17,276 |
| Empagliflozin | 01131676 | EMPA-REG OUTCOME | M/F age ≥18 y with established CVD | 7064 |
| Ertugliflozin[a] | 01986881 | VERTIS CV | M/F age ≥40 y w/coronary artery disease, cerebrovascular disease, and/or peripheral artery disease | 8000 |
| **DPP-4 inhibitors** | | | | |
| Alogliptin | 00968708 | EXAMINE | M/F age ≥18 y diagnosed with ACS within 15-90 days | 5380 |
| Linagliptin | 01897532 | CARMELINA | M/F age ≥18 y w/high-risk albuminuria and previous macrovascular disease and/or impaired renal function | 8300 |
| Linagliptin | 01243424 | CAROLINA | M/F age 40-85 y with pre-existing CVD or specified diabetes EOD or age ≥70 y or ≥2 CV risk factors | 6115 |
| Saxagliptin | 01107886 | SAVOR-TIMI53 | M/F age ≥40 y with established CVD and/or multiple risk factors | 18,206 |
| Sitagliptin | 00790205 | TECOS | M/F age ≥50 y with pre-existing CVD | 14,671 |
| **GLP-1 receptor agonists** | | | | |
| Albiglutide | 02465515 | HARMONY | M/F age ≥40 y w/coronary artery disease, cerebrovascular disease, and/or peripheral artery disease | 9400 |
| Dulaglutide | 01394952 | REWIND | M/F age ≥50 y w/established vascular disease or age ≥55 y with subclinical vascular disease or age ≥60 y with ≥2 CV risk factors | 9622 |
| Exenatide QW | 01144338 | EXSCEL | M/F age ≥18 y | 14,000 |
| Exenatide in EUROS[a] | 01455896 | ITCA 650 | M/F age ≥40 y with history of coronary, cerebrovascular, or peripheral artery disease | 4000 |
| Liraglutide | 01179048 | LEADER | M/F age ≥50 y with CV, cerebrovascular, or peripheral vascular disease or chronic renal failure or chronic heart failure or age ≥60 y with other specified risk factors of vascular disease | 9340 |
| Lixisenatide | 01147250 | ELIXA | M/F age ≥30 y with ACS event leading to hospitalization | 6076 |
| Semaglutide[a] | 01720446 | SUSTAIN 6 | M/F age >50 y w/CVD or age >60 y w/ subclinical CVD | 3297 |

**Note:** All trials are randomized, double-blind, parallel, placebo-controlled, and multi-center.

[a]Investigational in the United States.

**Abbreviations:** ACS, acute coronary syndrome (ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction, non-ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction, or unstable angina); CV, cardiovascular; CVD, cardiovascular disease; DPP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase-4; EOD, end-organ damage; F, female; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; M, male; NCT, national clinical trial; SGLT-2, sodium-glucose cotransporter-2; UACR, urine albumin to creatinine ratio.

**Source:** ClinicalTrials.gov.

**TABLE 2 Results of completed cardiovascular outcomes trials for antihyperglycemic medications in type 2 diabetes mellitus[a]**

| Trial | Medication | Primary endpoint | Heart failure hospitalization | All-cause death | Other key cardiovascular endpoints |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **SGLT-2 inhibitor** | | | | | |
| EMPA-REG OUTCOME[16] | Empagliflozin | 0.86[b] (0.74-0.99) | 0.65 (0.50-0.85) | 0.68 (0.57-0.82) | Silent myocardial infarction: 1.28 (0.70-2.33)<br>Unstable angina hospitalization: 0.99 (0.74-1.34)<br>Fatal or nonfatal stroke: 1.18 (0.89-1.56)<br>Nonfatal stroke: 1.24 (0.92-1.67)<br>Transient ischemic attack: 0.85 (0.51-1.42)<br>Heart failure death |
| **DPP-4 inhibitor** | | | | | |
| SAVOR-TIMI53[13] | Saxagliptin | 1.00[c] (0.89-1.12) | 1.27 (1.07-1.51) | 1.11 (0.96-1.27) | Ischemic stroke: 1.11 (0.88-1.39)<br>Unstable angina hospitalization: 1.19 (0.89-1.60)<br>Doubling of creatinine, initiation of dialysis, renal transplantation, or creatinine >6.0 mg/dL: 1.08 (0.88-1.32) |
| EXAMINE[14] | Alogliptin | 0.96[d] (upper-bound 1.16) | 1.19 (0.90-1.58) | 0.88 (0.71-1.09) | Nonfatal myocardial infarction: 1.08 (0.88-1.33)<br>Nonfatal stroke: 0.91 (0.55-1.50) |
| TECOS[15] | Sitagliptin | 0.98[e] (0.89-1.08) | 1.00 (0.83-1.20) | 1.01 (0.90-1.14) | Composite[d]: 0.99 (0.89-1.11) |
| **GLP-1 receptor agonist** | | | | | |
| ELIXA[17] | Lixisenatide | 1.02[e] (0.89-1.17) | 0.96 (0.75-1.23) | 0.94 (0.78-1.13) | Stroke: 1.12 (0.79-1.58)<br>Unstable angina: 1.11 (0.47-2.62) |
| LEADER[18] | Liraglutide | 0.87[d] (0.78-0.97) | 0.87 (0.73-1.05) | 0.85 (0.74-0.97) | Composite[f]: 0.88 (0.81-0.96)<br>Retinopathy: 1.15 (0.87-1.52) |
| SUSTAIN 6[19] | Semaglutide[g] | 0.74[c] (0.58-0.95) | 1.11 (0.77-1.61) | 1.05 (0.74-1.50) | Cardiovascular death: 0.98 (0.65-1.48)<br>Unstable angina hospitalization: 0.82 (0.47-1.44)<br>Retinopathy: 1.76 (1.11-2.78) |

**Abbreviations:** DPP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase-4; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; SGLT-2, sodium-glucose cotransporter-2.

[a]Data are presented as hazard ratio (95% confidence interval).

[b]Composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction (excluding silent myocardial infarction), nonfatal stroke.

[c]Composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal ischemic stroke.

[d]Composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke.

[e]Composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, hospitalization for unstable angina.

[f]Composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, coronary revascularization or hospitalization for unstable angina or heart failure.

[g]Investigational in the United States.

in patient population (primary or secondary prevention), study design, and duration of follow-up.

In these clinical trials, there were numerous exploratory analyses of the effects of these agents on other cardiovascular and renal endpoints. For empagliflozin, the risk of hospitalization for heart failure, cardiovascular and heart failure death, and nephropathy was significantly reduced.[16,23] For liraglutide, the risk of microvascular events and nephropathy was significantly reduced.[18] For semaglutide, the risks of nonfatal stroke, need for revascularization, and new or worsening nephropathy were significantly reduced, but the risk of retinopathy was increased.[19] Although these trials suggest a potential benefit, they were not statistically powered or designed to evaluate these

**TABLE 3** Results of endpoints demonstrating cardiovascular benefit with empagliflozin, liraglutide, and semaglutide[16,18,19]

| Endpoint | Rate/100 patient-years | | Hazard ratio (95% CI) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Placebo | Study drug | |
| **Empagliflozin** | | | |
| Cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke[a] | 4.39 | 3.74 | 0.86 (0.74-0.99) |
| All-cause death | 2.86 | 1.94 | 0.68 (0.57-0.82) |
| Cardiovascular death | 2.02 | 1.24 | 0.62 (0.49-0.77) |
| Heart failure hospitalization | 1.45 | 0.94 | 0.65 (0.50-0.85) |
| Heart failure hospitalization or cardiovascular death (excluding fatal stroke) | 3.01 | 1.97 | 0.66 (0.55-0.79) |
| **Liraglutide** | | | |
| Cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke[a] | 3.9 | 3.4 | 0.87 (0.78-0.97) |
| Cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, coronary revascularization, or hospitalization for unstable angina or heart failure | 6.0 | 5.3 | 0.88 (0.81-0.96) |
| All-cause death | 2.5 | 2.1 | 0.85 (0.74-0.97) |
| Cardiovascular death | 1.6 | 1.2 | 0.78 (0.66-0.93) |
| Microvascular event | 2.3 | 2.0 | 0.84 (0.73-0.97) |
| Nephropathy | 1.9 | 1.5 | 0.78 (0.67-0.92) |
| **Semaglutide** | | | |
| Cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke[a] | 4.44 | 3.24 | 0.74 (0.58-0.95) |
| All-cause death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke | 4.81 | 3.66 | 0.77 (0.61-0.97) |
| Nonfatal stroke | 1.31 | 0.80 | 0.61 (0.38-0.99) |
| Revascularization | 3.85 | 2.50 | 0.65 (0.50-0.86) |
| New or worsening nephropathy | 3.06 | 1.86 | 0.64 (0.46-0.88) |

**Abbreviation:** CI, confidence interval.

[a]Primary endpoint.

endpoints, which must be investigated in prospective, randomized controlled trials.

The unanimous findings of these 7 completed trials with respect to MACE have led some experts to recommend a reassessment of the 2008 FDA guidance.[12,24] Experts also point out that a re-examination of the 2007 meta-analysis of rosiglitazone by Nissen et al, which provided the impetus for the 2008 FDA guidance, actually showed no imbalance in MACE events with rosiglitazone as the upper limit of the 95% CI for the HR was less than 1.30 (HR = 0.97; 95% CI, 0.79-1.18).[25] Instead of requiring a phase 3 clinical trial to specifically assess cardiovascular risk, the experts opine that the information from the 7 completed and 9 ongoing trials should be integrated with other available evidence to inform a more targeted safety assessment strategy.[12] Moreover, this targeted strategy should be integrated with other FDA preapproval and post-marketing surveillance mechanisms.

## IMPLICATIONS FOR PRIMARY CARE

The cardiovascular safety of antihyperglycemic medications came into question a decade ago, leading to the FDA action requiring that a phase 3 clinical trial be conducted to assess cardiovascular risk of the new antihyperglycemic medication relative to placebo as part of standard care. Of the 16 trials conducted under the 2008 FDA guidance, the 7 trials that have been completed show that the 3 different classes of medications do not pose an increased risk of MACE. These results should provide reassurance about cardiovascular risk with these medications. Moreover, the evidence

regarding the cardiovascular benefits of empagliflozin, liraglutide, and semaglutide is especially encouraging.

## ONGOING DIABETES MEDICATION OUTCOME TRIALS

The ongoing diabetes medication outcome trials will provide additional data concerning the cardiovascular safety of the remaining DPP-4i, GLP-1RA, and SGLT-2i agents. These trials will include data from adults with kidney disease and other diabetes-related end organ damage. Due to the large numbers of patients in these trials relative to phase 3 safety and efficacy trials conducted for regulatory approval, these outcome trials will provide the opportunity to learn more about rare adverse events, as well as potential differences among the medications. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Di Angelantonio E, Kaptoge S, Wormser D, et al. Association of cardiometabolic multimorbidity with mortality. *JAMA*. 2015;314(1):52-60.
2. Erqou S, Lee CT, Suffoletto M, et al. Association between glycated haemoglobin and the risk of congestive heart failure in diabetes mellitus: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Heart Fail*. 2013;15(2):185-193.
3. Stratton IM, Adler AI, Neil HA; on behalf of the UK Prospective Diabetes Study. Association of glycaemia with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 35): prospective observational study. *BMJ*. 2000;321(7258):405-412.
4. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;356(24):2457-2471.
5. Lincoff AM, Wolski K, Nicholls SJ, Nissen SE. Pioglitazone and risk of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *JAMA*. 2007;298(10):1180-1188.
6. Dormandy JA, Charbonnel B, Eckland DJ, et al. Secondary prevention of macrovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes in the PROactive Study (PROspective pioglitAzone Clinical Trial In macroVascular Events): a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet*. 2005;366(9493):1279-1289.
7. Kahn SE, Haffner SM, Heise MA, et al. Glycemic durability of rosiglitazone, metformin, or glyburide monotherapy. *N Engl J Med*. 2006;355(23):2427-2443.
8. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA issues safety alert on Avandia. http://www.fda.gov/newsevents/newsroom/pressannouncements/2007/ucm108917.htm. Published 2007. Accessed August 17, 2016.
9. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes—an interim analysis. *N Engl J Med*. 2007;357(1):28-38.
10. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes in oral agent combination therapy for type 2 diabetes (RECORD): a multicentre, randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet*. 2009;373(9681):2125-2135.
11. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for industry: Diabetes mellitus—Evaluating cardiovascular risk in new antidiabetic therapies to treat type 2 diabetes. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guiddances/ucm071627.pdf. Published 2008. Accessed April 14, 2010.
12. Smith RJ, Goldfine AB, Hiatt WR. Evaluating the cardiovascular safety of new medications for type 2 diabetes: time to reassess? *Diabetes Care*. 2016;39(5):738-742.
13. Scirica BM, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, et al. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(14):1317-1326.
14. White WB, Cannon CP, Heller SR, et al. Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(14):1327-1335.
15. Green JB, Bethel MA, Armstrong PW, et al. Effect of sitagliptin on cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(3):232-242.
16. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(22):2117-2128.
17. Pfeffer MA, Claggett B, Diaz R, et al. Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute coronary syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2015;373(23):2247-2257.
18. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(4):311-322.
19. Marso SP, Bain SC, Consoli A, et al. Semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2016:doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1607141.
20. Fu AZ, Johnston SS, Ghannam A, et al. Association between hospitalization for heart failure and dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors in patients with type 2 diabetes: An observational study. *Diabetes Care*. 2016;39(5):726-734.
21. Onglyza [package insert]. Princeton, NJ: Bristol-Myers Squibb Company; 2016.
22. Nesina [package insert]. Deerfield, IL: Takeda Pharmaceuticals America, Inc.; 2016.
23. Wanner C, Inzucchi SE, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin and progression of kidney disease in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med*. 2016;375(4):323-334.
24. Hiatt WR, Kaul S, Smith RJ. The cardiovascular safety of diabetes drugs—insights from the rosiglitazone experience. *N Engl J Med*. 2013;369(14):1285-1287.
25. Mahaffey KW, Hafley G, Dickerson S, et al. Results of a reevaluation of cardiovascular outcomes in the RECORD trial. *Am Heart J*. 2013;166(2):240-249.

# Demystifying the Differences: Follow-on Biologics, Biosimilars, and Generics

Eugene E. Wright, Jr., MD; Thomas C. Blevins, MD, FACE, FNLA, ECNU; Beverly Reed, MSN; and Roy Daniel Pollom, MD

Advances in medicine have contributed to improved health and increased longevity, but the rising cost of health care has strained both governmental and individual budgets. Patient access to health care services also has been affected, leading to the implementation of numerous strategies to manage these rising costs. The Hatch-Waxman Act of 1984 led to the availability of generic versions of branded drugs, with an estimated $1.7 trillion in savings from 2005 to 2014.[1] More recently, in 2010 the US Congress enacted the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA) that included provisions to improve access to biologic therapies.[2] Specifically, the PPACA introduced the 351(k) pathway to define the requirements needed for submission of a Biologic License Application (BLA) for approval of biosimilar products that are highly similar to their reference product.[3-11]

This article introduces key issues in the evolving US landscape of follow-on biologics, a category of biological products that includes biosimilars, and the implications for the primary care provider. To facilitate understanding, a glossary of terms is provided in **TABLE 1**.[5,12-14]

**Eugene E. Wright, Jr., MD,** Consulting Associate, Department of Medicine and Department of Community and Family Medicine, Southern Regional Area Health Education Center, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, NC

**Thomas C. Blevins, MD, FACE, FNLA, ECNU,** Texas Diabetes and Endocrinology, Austin, TX

**Beverly Reed, MSN,** Eli Lilly and Company, Indianapolis, IN

**Roy Daniel Pollom, MD,** Eli Lilly and Company, Indianapolis, IN

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Wright discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company Alliance; Eli Lilly and Company; and Voluntis USA. He serves on the speakers' bureaus for Abbott Diabetes Care; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH/Eli Lilly and Company Alliance; and Eli Lilly and Company.

Dr. Blevins discloses that he is on the speakers' bureaus for Amgen Inc; AstraZeneca; Boehringer-Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Merck & Co., Inc.; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US. He receives research support from Eli Lilly and Company; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US.

Ms. Reed and Dr. Pollom disclose that they are employees and minor shareholders of Eli Lilly and Company.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Eli Lilly and Company.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, Primary Care Education Consortium, and Neehar Gupta, MSc, Eli Lilly and Company, for their assistance in writing and editing the manuscript.

## FOLLOW-ON BIOLOGICS VS BIOSIMILARS

Sponsors of follow-on biologics can submit their applications for approval by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) under 2 distinct pathways.[14,15] The submission pathway is determined by the pathway previously used by the reference biologic product, which is the biologic product upon which the follow-on product relies for evidence of safety and efficacy (**FIGURE 1**).[16]

Prior to 2010, the reference biologic products for insulin, human growth hormone, and calcitonin were submitted as New Drug Applications (NDAs); in contrast, most other biologic products filed their original submissions as BLAs. Under the FDA framework, follow-on biologics use the same approval pathway as was used by their reference product; consequently, follow-on biologics for insulin, human growth hormone, and calcitonin are filed as NDAs.[14,15] Follow-on biologics approved under a BLA are referred to as biosimilars, which is a regulatory designation, while those approved using an NDA are described by the term "follow-on biologic" to the reference product. On March 23, 2020, pursuant to the PPACA, the dual submission pathways for follow-on biologics will come to an end. After this date, all follow-ons will submit using a BLA and all follow-on biologics previously submitted using an NDA will be deemed to be biosimilar. While the FDA has not yet defined these transition rules, it is reasonable to assume that a follow-on biologic previously approved as an NDA and otherwise meeting the scientific and legal requirements of a biosimilar will no longer be referred to as a

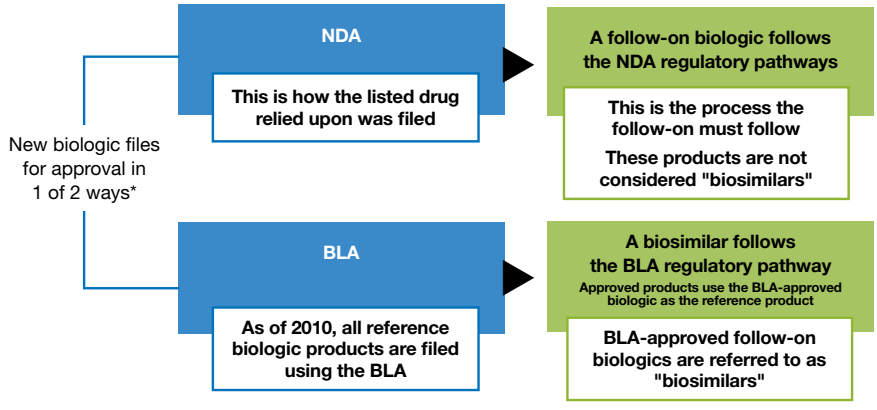
**TABLE 1** Glossary of terms[5,12-14]

| Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Approved product | Listed drug relied upon if approved under the 505(b)(1) pathway; reference product if approved under a biologics license application (BLA) |
| Biosimilar | A biological product shown to be highly similar to the reference product, notwithstanding minor differences in clinically active components and with no clinically meaningful differences compared with the reference product in terms of safety, purity, and potency |
| Follow-on biologic | A biologic product shown to be safe and effective compared with the listed drug relied upon where some of the supporting evidence comes from studies not conducted by/for the sponsor and for which the sponsor has not obtained a right of reference |
| Generic drug | A drug that is chemically identical to a branded drug |
| Interchangeable | A biosimilar supported by evidence that it can be expected to produce the same clinical result as the reference product in a patient and, if administered more than once, the risk in terms of safety or diminished efficacy of alternating or switching between the biosimilar and reference product is not greater than the risk of using the reference product without such alternation or switch |
| Reference biologic product | The single biological product licensed under section 351(a) of the Public Health Service Act against which a biological product is evaluated in a 351(k) application |
| Substitution | The practice of substitution occurs at the pharmacy and is regulated by state laws |

follow-on biologic and will be referred to as a biosimilar as of March 2020.[7]

An abbreviated regulatory process for approval allows a follow-on biologic to rely upon data that the follow-on sponsor did not generate, such as published literature or previous findings of safety and efficacy for a reference biomedicine product.[5,14] Whereas the development of a new drug or biologic requires extensive clinical testing, follow-on biologics may use an abbreviated development program as outlined by the PPACA and FDA guidance (**FIGURE 2**).[5] These applications will include preclinical assessment along with phase 1 and phase 3 clinical studies. Phase 2 studies are not required to establish similarity to the reference drug. Phase 1 studies are conducted in a small number of subjects to demonstrate that the follow-on biologic has similar pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties to its reference product. Phase 3 studies are larger studies designed to confirm efficacy and safety, including the immunogenicity profile. To be approved as a follow-on biologic, there must be no clinically meaningful differences between the follow-on biologic and the reference product. Five biosimilars have been approved by the FDA through the BLA pathway since 2015 (**TABLE 2**).

**FIGURE 1** Development pathways for follow-on biologics




**Abbreviations:** BLA, biologic license application; NDA, new drug application.

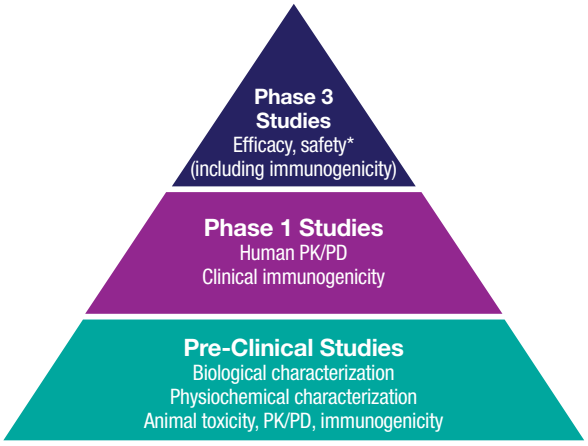
*Until March 23, 2020.

In December 2015, the FDA approved Basaglar (insulin glargine) as a follow-on biologic to Lantus. Basaglar was the first follow-on insulin approved in the United States, and was submitted, like Lantus, using an NDA. More biosimilars as well as follow-on biologic insulins are in development and are expected to be submitted for approval in the future.

## FOLLOW-ON BIOLOGICS VS GENERICS

Follow-on biologics are often incorrectly referred to as biogenerics, biocopies, bioidenticals, or other terms that imply they are generic drugs. Follow-on biologics are very different from small-molecule generics, although they share 2 key similarities. First, both were developed to provide lower-cost medication alternatives. Second, to be approved by the FDA, both

**FIGURE 2** Stepwise development of a follow-on biologic




**Abbreviations:** PD, pharmacodynamics; PK, pharmacokinetics.

*Compared with the reference product.

must demonstrate physical and/or chemical characteristics in comparison to their previously approved reference product.

Beyond that, there are numerous differences between generic drugs and follow-on biologics (**TABLE 3**[3,5,7,13-15,17,18]). These are primarily due to differences in the manufacturing process and the structural differences between small-molecule generics and large-molecule biologics (**FIGURE 3**). In contrast to generic molecules, follow-on biologics are not identical copies of the reference product. All generics, unlike follow-on biologics, can be fully characterized chemically and the process of chemical synthesis is relatively straightforward. Generic drugs are not required to undergo phase 2 or phase 3 evaluations or to bear the expense of animal and extensive clinical testing.[13,14] Consequently, the cost to develop a generic drug is far less than for its branded reference product.

Follow-on biologics are produced in living cells or organisms and often rely on recombinant DNA technology. As part of the evidence developed for their regulatory submission, biologic molecules must undergo biochemical and physicochemical analysis and pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic testing, and provide safety and efficacy data designed to meet the FDA's regulatory requirements. Furthermore, once the biological structure of the active substance of a follow-on biologic is determined to be similar, there is still no guarantee that the safety and efficacy of the molecule is sufficiently similar to its reference product. Therefore, unlike generic drugs, follow-on biologics are required to undergo phase 3 clinical testing—albeit not as extensive as that required for the previously approved reference biologic.[5] Thus, the expense to develop a follow-on biologic is less than its reference product, yet much greater than a small-molecule generic.

### Interchangeability, therapeutic equivalence, and substitution

Interchangeability is a regulatory designation that is different from that of biosimilarity. Though the FDA has not issued specific guidance on interchangeability, it has proposed that the sponsor of a follow-on biologic would need to demonstrate, in either pre- or postmarketing studies, that repeated switches from the follow-on biologic to its reference product would show no negative effects with respect to safety, efficacy, or immunogenicity.[19]

Small-molecule generics may be substituted by the pharmacist if they are rated as therapeutically equivalent.[17] Therapeutic equivalence for a generic molecule is established if it demonstrates bioequivalence to its reference drug.[17] At this time, there are no criteria for establishing therapeutic equivalence of follow-on biologics approved using the drug pathway. Therefore, follow-on biologics are not rated as therapeutically equivalent and cannot be substituted by the pharmacist without the authorization of the prescriber. The prescriber retains the right to switch a patient from a follow-on biologic to its reference biologic product or vice versa, as this is within the scope of medical practice.

Substitution of biologic medicines by the pharmacist will require that a follow-on biologic is approved as a biosimilar

**TABLE 2** Biosimilars approved in the United States

| Biosimilar | | Reference product | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Generic name** | **Proprietary name** | **Generic name** | **Proprietary name** |
| Filgrastim-sndz | Zarxio | Filgrastim | Neupogen |
| Infliximab-dyyb | Inflectra | Infliximab | Remicade |
| Infliximab-dyyb | Remsima | Infliximab | Remicade |
| Etanercept-szzs | Erelzi | Etanercept | Enbrel |
| Adalimumab-atto | Amjevita | Adalimumab | Humira |

**TABLE 3 Comparison of generic drugs and follow-on biologics**

| | Generic drugs[13,17,18] | Follow-on biologics/biosimilars[3,5,7,14,15] |
|---|---|---|
| **Characteristics** | • Small, well-defined molecules (<500 to 900 Daltons) | • Large, complex molecules (usually proteins) with potential structural variations (4000 to >140,000 Daltons) |
| | • Identical to reference product | • Highly similar to reference product |
| | • Mostly without a device | • Device is often a key differentiator from the reference product (eg, insulin pen in the case of insulins) |
| | • Predominately oral delivery | • Predominately parenteral delivery |
| | • Immunogenicity is not an issue | • Immunogenicity must always be evaluated |
| **Development** | • Able to prove identical structure to reference product through analytical characterization | • Significant R&D to develop (cell line, manufacturing process, formulation, etc)<br>• Significant challenges in fully characterizing the molecule<br>• Difficult to "copy" manufacturing process of reference product |
| | • Very limited clinical trials required (often only phase 1 PK/PD studies in healthy volunteers) | • Emphasis on phase 1 studies in humans and animals to demonstrate highly similar structure, PK, PD to reference product<br>• Phase 3 studies in humans largely to confirm safety relative to reference product<br>• Postmarketing surveillance is required |
| **Production** | • Chemical synthesis | • Genetically modified living organisms |
| | • Well-characterized by validated analytical methods | • Multiple methods used to characterize |
| | • Manufacturing changes easily validated | • Highly sensitive to manufacturing changes |
| | • Relatively low cost to manufacture | • Often comparatively high costs |
| **Other** | • Relatively stable | • Sensitive to storage and handling conditions |
| | • Generally low potential for immune reactions | • Higher potential for immune reactions |
| **FDA Pathway for Approval** | • 505(j) | • 505(b)(2) if approved biologic developed under 505(b)(1) |
| | | • 301(k) if approved biologic developed under 301(a)/BLA |

**Abbreviations:** BLA, Biologic License Application; FDA, US Food and Drug Administration; PD, pharmacodynamics; PK, pharmacokinetics; R&D, research and development.

with a designation of interchangeability. The practice of pharmacist substitution is also regulated by state substitution laws.

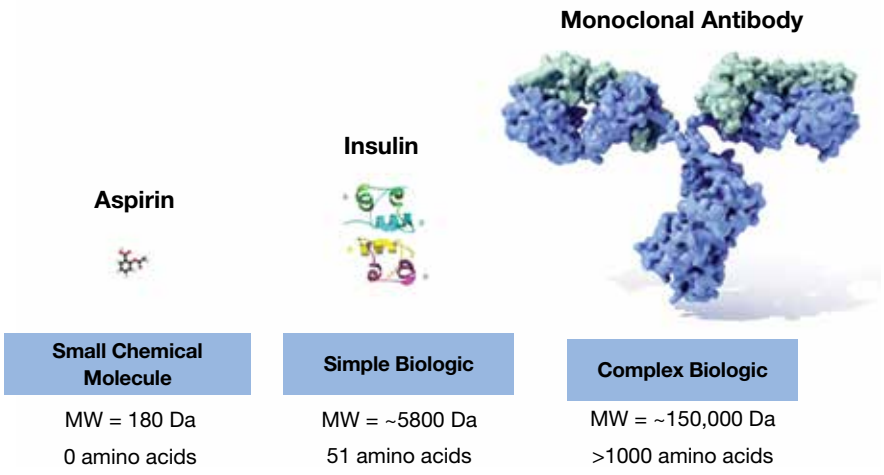
### Prescriber considerations regarding follow-on insulin glargine

As mentioned previously, follow-on biologics represent an evolving strategy to improve patient access to biologic medicines at a lower cost. In Europe, the average price discount for biosimilars compared to the reference biologic product has been 25% to 30%.[20] Estimated cost savings associated with follow-on biologics in Europe and the United States could amount to $110 billion in US dollars in 2015-2020.[21] As these medications are introduced into primary care, several factors should be kept in mind. Some of those related to the follow-on insulin glargine Basaglar are presented below in an author/-clinician exchange, which occurred on August 18, 2016.

**Dr. Wright:** Now that 3 insulin glargine formulations will be available in the United States after December 15, 2016, are there any precautions primary care providers should take when prescribing insulin glargine U-100?

**Dr. Blevins:** Yes, several points should be kept in mind. First, there are distinct pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic differences between glargine U-100 and glargine U-300. It is therefore incumbent upon the prescriber to state on the prescription which of the 3 insulin glargine products is desired. The dose of insulin glargine

**FIGURE 3** Complexity of small molecules vs biologics




**Abbreviations:** Da, Daltons; MW, molecular weight.

**Source:** US Food and Drug Administration. Biosimilars - An Update. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AdvisoryCommittees/CommitteesMeetingMaterials/Drugs/AdvisoryCommitteeforPharmaceuticalSciencesandClinicalPharmacology/UCM315764.pdf. Published August 8, 2012. Accessed March 13, 2017.

should always be expressed in units. Basaglar has not been approved as therapeutically equivalent with Lantus; therefore, Basaglar cannot be substituted for Lantus by the pharmacist and vice versa. Note, however, that neither Basaglar nor Lantus are immune to formulary limitations that may be imposed by integrated health systems or pharmacy benefit managers.

**Dr. Blevins:** I recently had a conversation with a primary care colleague about a 42-year-old patient with type 2 diabetes. The patient has an HbA1c of 6.9% and has been treated for several months with metformin 1000 mg twice daily and 60 units of the Lantus brand of insulin glargine U-100 with dinner. My colleague is considering changing his patient to Basaglar, but isn't sure how to do it.

**Dr. Wright:** To be approved as a follow-on biologic to Lantus, Basaglar was required to demonstrate similar pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties, as well as comparable effectiveness to Lantus. This means that Basaglar would be dosed with the same number of units as previously used for Lantus—in this case, 60 units with dinner. If the patient was to be switched from insulin glargine U-300 (Toujeo) to Basaglar, it is recommended in the prescribing information for Basaglar to reduce the initial dose of Basaglar to 80% of the Toujeo dose, or 48 units.

## SUMMARY

Follow-on biologics are submitted and approved through either an NDA or BLA regulatory pathway. The development program for follow-on biologics is based on the totality of evidence and is supported by a comprehensive preclinical and clinical development process. Insulin, calcitonin, and human growth hormone are 3 classes of biologic drugs that would submit an NDA to advance a follow-on biologic application before March 23, 2020. The approval standards for follow-on biologics are far more stringent than those required for small-molecule generic drugs due to the complex nature of therapeutic proteins. The FDA requirements for demonstrating interchangeability (a regulatory designation that applies to biosimilars only) have not been defined by the FDA, and state laws regarding substitution continue to evolve. Follow-on biologics, including biosimilars, are expected to be a key strategy in lowering cost and increasing patient access to biologics.

In conclusion:

- All biosimilars are considered to be follow-on biologics, but not all follow-on biologics meet the regulatory designation to be a biosimilar.
- Follow-on biologics are complex therapeutic proteins and are more costly to develop than small-molecule, chemically derived generics.
- There is currently no guidance on interchangeability for biosimilars and follow-on biologics like Basaglar, and they are not expected to be substitutable at the pharmacy without prescriber authorization. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Generic Pharmaceutical Association. Generic drug savings in the U.S. Seventh annual edition: 2015. http://www.gphaonline.org/media/wysiwyg/PDF/GPhA_Savings_Report_2015.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
2. Congress of the United States of America. Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act. http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-111publ148/pdf/PLAW-111publ148.pdf. Published 2010. Accessed March 20, 2017.
3. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Clinical Pharmacology Data to Support a Demonstration of Biosimilarity to a Reference Product. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm397017.pdf. Published 2014. Accessed March 20, 2017.
4. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Reference Product Exclusivity for Biological Products Filed Under 351(a) of the PHS Act. http://www.fdanews.com/ext/resources/files/08/08-04-14-BiosimilarsExclusivityGuidance.pdf. Published 2014. Accessed March 20, 2017.
5. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Scientific Considerations in Demonstrating Biosimilarity to a Reference Product. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM291128.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
6. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Quality Considerations in Demonstrating Biosimilarity of a Therapeutic Protein Product to a Reference

Product. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM291134.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
7. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Biosimilars: Questions and Answers Regarding Implementation of the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM444661.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
8. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Biosimilars: Additional Questions and Answers Regarding Implementation of the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM273001.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
9. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Nonproprietary Naming of Biological Products. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm459987.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
10. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Formal Meetings Between the FDA and Biosimilar Biological Product Sponsors or Applicants. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM345649.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
11. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Labeling for Biosimilar Products. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidancecomplianceregulatoryinformation/guidances/ucm493439.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed March 20, 2017.
12. US Food and Drug Administration. Implementation of the "Deemed to be a License" Provision of the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM490264.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed March 20, 2017.
13. US Food and Drug Administration. Generic drugs: Questions and answers. http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/ResourcesForYou/Consumers/QuestionsAnswers/ucm100100.htm. Published 2013. Accessed March 20, 2017.
14. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Applications Covered by Section 505(b)(2). http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/.../Guidances/ucm079345.pdf. Published 1999. Accessed March 20, 2017.
15. US Food and Drug Administration. Therapeutic Biologic Applications (BLA). http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/HowDrugsareDevelopedandApproved/ApprovalApplications/TherapeuticBiologicApplications/default.htm. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
16. Ventola CL. Biosimilars: part 1: proposed regulatory criteria for FDA approval. *P T*. 2013;38(5):270-287.
17. US Food and Drug Administration. Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations 36th edition. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/UCM071436.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed March 20, 2017.
18. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Bioequivalence Studies with Pharmacokinetic Endpoints for Drugs Submitted Under an ANDA. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM377465.pdf. Published 2013. Accessed March 20, 2017.
19. US Food and Drug Administration. Information for Consumers (Biosimilars). http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DevelopmentApprovalProcess/HowDrugsareDevelopedandApproved/ApprovalApplications/TherapeuticBiologicApplications/Biosimilars/ucm241718.htm. Published 2015. Accessed March 20, 2017.
20. Grabowski H. Office of Health Economics. Biosimilar competition: Lessons from Europe and Prospects for the US. https://www.ohe.org/publications/biosimilar-competition-lessons-europe-and-prospects-us. Published 2014. Accessed March 20, 2017.
21. Aitken M. IMS Institute for Healthcare Informatics. Delivering on the potential of biosimilar medicines. The role of functioning competitive markets. https://www.imshealth.com/files/web/IMSH%20Institute/Healthcare%20Briefs/Documents/IMS_Institute_Biosimilar_Brief_March_2016.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed March 20, 2017.

# Titratable Fixed-Ratio Combinations in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Focus on GLP-1R Agonists Combined With Basal Insulin

James LaSalle, DO, FAAFP; and John R. White, Jr., PA-C, PharmD

**CASE STUDY:** MA is a 59-year-old male diagnosed with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) 9 months ago (glycated hemoglobin A1c [HbA1c] 8.8%). Metformin was initiated and titrated to 1000 mg twice daily. His HbA1c now is 7.7%; fasting plasma glucose (FPG) 94-126 mg/dL. Except for hypertension (BP 134/82 on hydrochlorothiazide [HCTZ]) and obesity (weight 220 pounds, body mass index 31.5 kg/m$^2$), he is in otherwise good health. MA comments that, although he is trying to keep a positive attitude about his diabetes, he has found his life challenging since receiving the diagnosis of T2DM.

## INTRODUCTION

This case scenario presents a common situation in which the HbA1c remains elevated despite maximal metformin therapy and a normal FPG. The treatment of hyperglycemia in patients without glycemic control despite metformin monotherapy is the focus of this article, with particular focus on the use of fixed-dose (FDC) and fixed-ratio combination products.

## BEYOND METFORMIN

There are 2 general approaches that can be taken to achieve glycemic control when metformin therapy is not adequate. One is a sequential approach in which a second medication is added and titrated until glycemic control is achieved. If glycemic control is not achieved within a short period of time, eg, 3 months, and the maximum dose is reached or adverse effects become unacceptable, a third medication is added, with further adjustment as needed. The sequential approach is generally consistent with current recommendations of the America Diabetes Association/European Association for the Study of Diabetes and the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists/American College of Endocrinology.[1,2] The other approach is to initiate combination therapy at the outset in patients with baseline HbA1c who are unlikely to attain their glycemic goal with monotherapy. The threshold baseline HbA1c for initiating combination therapy is generally 9%.[1,2]

The sequential approach is reasonable provided that medication doses are titrated over a few months and medications are added in a timely fashion when glycemic control has not been achieved. In practice, however, clinical inertia often occurs, leading to delays of months or years in adjusting medications.[3,4] As a consequence, patients are unnecessarily exposed to long periods of hyperglycemia, which increases the risks of cardiovascular events in patients with T2DM.[5-10] The United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) showed that microvascular complications are related to the severity and duration of hyperglycemia.[11,12] This added risk is on top of the increased cardiovascular risk that starts within the normal glucose range and occurs without evidence of a threshold effect.[13-17] In fact, a transition from low to high cardiovascular risk has been shown to occur nearly 15 years earlier in patients with T2DM vs healthy controls.[18]

Additional observations from the UKPDS underscore the importance of early control of hyperglycemia; most noteworthy, benefits of blood glucose control were sustained for up to 10 years after cessation of randomized treatment.[19] The importance of this so-called legacy effect has been echoed by investigators and diabetes organizations.[20]

## INDIVIDUALIZING TREATMENT BEYOND METFORMIN

Ten classes of medication are available for use in combination with metformin. The selection of additional therapy is based

**James LaSalle, DO, FAAFP,** The Excelsior Springs Clinic, Excelsior Springs, MO

**John R. White, Jr., PA-C, PharmD,** Chair and Professor, Department of Pharmacotherapy, Washington State University, College of Pharmacy, Spokane, WA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. LaSalle discloses that he is on the advisory board for Sanofi US and on the advisory board and speakers' bureau for Novo Nordisk Inc.

Dr. White discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Novo Nordisk Inc., and Sanofi US.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Sanofi US.

on a host of medication, patient, and other factors. Medication factors include mechanism(s) of action that complement metformin and that address pathophysiologic defects, magnitude of additional glycemic lowering, effect on FPG and postprandial glucose (PPG), adverse events, effect on body weight, and durability. Patient factors include comorbidities such as cardiovascular disease and renal dysfunction, hypoglycemic awareness, body weight, and history of medication adherence. Insurance coverage and treatment affordability are important considerations as well.

Although FPG is the primary target of initial treatment with metformin, as the case scenario shows, reducing the FPG to the normal range sometimes does not result in a HbA1c <7.0%. The reason for this persistence in elevated HbA1c is that PPG also contributes to the HbA1c. Whereas a HbA1c >10.2% is primarily determined by the FPG, a HbA1c <7.3% is primarily determined by the PPG.[21] In fact, the FPG and PPG contribute equally when the HbA1c is in the range of 7.3% to 8.4%. Consequently, add-on therapy to metformin that significantly lowers PPG is often desirable.

The case scenario also suggests some degree of clinical inertia by the provider, because 9 months have elapsed since the patient's diagnosis and the patient's HbA1c remains above the glycemic target at 7.7%, yet his only treatment is metformin. The patient's admission that he has found life challenging since the diagnosis of T2DM suggests that he may be experiencing clinical inertia as well. Talking with the patient to identify his concerns and challenges is an important first step in resolving clinical inertia. In this case, asking MA what he has found challenging would be a good place to start. Once identified, many patient factors that contribute to clinical inertia can be quickly resolved. Adding to metformin a medication with a low incidence of hypoglycemia or that does not promote weight gain is often helpful to patients. In addition, combination products may ease patient concerns about pill burden and may lower cost compared with taking the individual medications.[22,23]

The remainder of this article focuses on the use of existing and emerging combination products for use in the treatment of patients with T2DM. These include FDCs that contain metformin, as well as fixed-ratio combination products.

## METFORMIN FIXED-DOSE COMBINATION PRODUCTS

Metformin is available in numerous FDCs with the classes of medications with which it is typically used, including dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor, sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitor, sulfonylurea, and thiazolidinedione (**TABLE 1**). The impact of an FDC vs individual medications on patient adherence, glycemic control, patient satisfaction, and cost has been evaluated in several mostly retrospective studies.[22-27]

**TABLE 1** **Metformin fixed-dose combination products[a]**

| Metformin dose | Oral agent and dose |
|---|---|
| 250 mg | Glipizide 2.5 mg |
| | Glyburide 1.25 mg |
| | Linagliptin 2.5 mg |
| 500 mg | Alogliptin 12.5 mg |
| | Canagliflozin 50 mg,[b] 150 mg[b] |
| | Dapagliflozin 5 mg,[c] 10 mg[c] |
| | Empagliflozin 5 mg, 12.5 mg |
| | Glipizide 2.5 mg, 5 mg |
| | Glyburide 2.5 mg, 5 mg |
| | Pioglitazone 15 mg |
| | Repaglinide 1 mg, 2 mg |
| | Rosiglitazone 2 mg, 4 mg |
| | Saxagliptin 5 mg[c] |
| | Sitagliptin 50 mg[b] |
| 850 mg | Linagliptin 2.5 mg |
| | Pioglitazone 15 mg |
| | Sitagliptin 50 mg |
| 1000 mg | Alogliptin 12.5 mg |
| | Canagliflozin 50 mg,[b] 150 mg[b] |
| | Dapagliflozin 5 mg,[c] 10 mg[c] |
| | Empagliflozin 5 mg,[b] 10 mg,[c] 12.5 mg,[b] 25 mg[c] |
| | Linagliptin 2.5 mg,[b] 5 mg[c] |
| | Pioglitazone 15 mg, 30 mg[c] |
| | Rosiglitazone 2 mg, 4 mg |
| | Saxagliptin 2.5 mg,[c] 5 mg[c] |
| | Sitagliptin 50 mg,[b] 100 mg[c] |

[a]Immediate-release form unless otherwise specified.

[b]Immediate-release and extended-release forms available.

[c]Extended-release form.

General findings of these studies indicate that patient adherence decreases when patients move from monotherapy to dual therapy with the individual medications, but the decrease in adherence is small when patients move from monotherapy to an FDC.[22,25,27] However, adherence improves when patients move from dual therapy with the individual medications to an FDC.[22,23,25] Improved adherence with the FDC has important benefits, including a 0.5% greater reduction in the HbA1c level compared with individual medications.[28] Also, patient satisfaction is higher with an FDC compared with individual medications.[29]

## COMBINING A GLP-1RA WITH BASAL INSULIN

Two classes of medications that have taken on a greater recommended role for the management of patients with T2DM are the glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1RAs) and basal insulin.[1,2]

While the GLP-1RAs reduce both FPG and PPG, the shorter-acting GLP-1RAs (exenatide twice daily and lixisenatide) exert a greater effect on PPG, while the long-acting GLP-1RAs (albiglutide, dulaglutide, exenatide once weekly, and liraglutide) exert a greater effect on FPG.[30] In addition to lowering FPG and PPG, the GLP-1RAs produce several other beneficial effects. Among these are a low incidence of hypoglycemia, a mean weight loss of 2.9 kg, mean diastolic and systolic blood pressure reductions of 1.4 mm Hg and 3.6 mm Hg, respectively, and mean total cholesterol reduction of 3.9 mg/dL.[31] Recent evidence also indicates that liraglutide results in cardiovascular benefit by virtue of lowering the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events (MACE; ie, composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and nonfatal stroke) compared with placebo as part of standard care.[32] In patients with a myocardial infarction or hospitalization for unstable angina within the previous 180 days, lixisenatide was shown to pose no increased risk vs placebo for the composite endpoint of cardiovascular death, myocardial infarction, stroke, or hospitalization for unstable angina.[33]

For patients with baseline HbA1c >9.0%, a combination of a GLP-1RA and basal insulin, metformin and GLP-1RA, or metformin and basal insulin are recommended treatment options.[1,2] A GLP-1RA is generally preferred over prandial insulin because of demonstrated equal or superior glycemic efficacy with weight loss and less hypoglycemia.[1] Furthermore, the addition to metformin of a GLP-1RA or basal insulin are 2 of the recommended treatment options for patients with HbA1c ≥7.5% who do not achieve adequate glycemic control with metformin.[1,2]

## TITRATABLE FIXED-RATIO COMBINATIONS OF BASAL INSULIN/GLP-1RA

Two products that combine a basal insulin with a GLP-1RA were approved by the US Food and Drug Administration in November 2016. Both products are titratable. One is the fixed-ratio combination of insulin glargine U-100 and the GLP-1RA lixisenatide that can be titrated to deliver glargine over a range of 15 to 60 units per day in a 3:1 ratio with lixisenatide. The fixed-ratio combination limits the dose of lixisenatide to a maximum of 20 mcg/d. The other is a fixed-ratio combination of insulin degludec U-100 and the GLP-1RA liraglutide that can be titrated over a range of 50 dose units. Each dose unit is a ratio of 1 unit of degludec and 0.036 mg of liraglutide. The maximum daily single administration is 50 units of degludec and 1.8 mg of liraglutide. Use of these fixed-ratio combinations is relatively straightforward, as both products are titrated based on only the basal insulin component to achieve the glycemic target. Titration based on the basal insulin component allows for a slow increase in the dose of the GLP-1RA, thereby reducing the incidence and severity of nausea and vomiting associated with the GLP-1RA.

### Insulin glargine/lixisenatide

The fixed-ratio combination of insulin glargine and lixisenatide (IGlarLixi) has been studied in two 30-week trials of patients with T2DM. In the first, IGlarLixi was compared with glargine and lixisenatide given separately to patients with T2DM inadequately controlled on metformin with or without a second oral glucose-lowering medication.[34] Patients completed a 4-week run-in phase to stabilize treatment, during which time only metformin was continued and the dose optimized. The HbA1c decreased from 8.2% to 8.1% during the run-in phase.

Subsequently, patients with an HbA1c of 7.0% to 10.0% were randomized to open-label treatment with IGlarLixi, glargine, or lixisenatide 20 mcg/d. Patients randomized to IGlarLixi were started at a dose of 10 units/5 mcg and titrated up to a dose of 40 units/20 mcg; higher doses were administered using IGlarLixi in a ratio of 3:1. The doses of IGlarLixi and glargine were titrated to a maximum of 60 units/d glargine and 20 mcg/d lixisenatide to achieve and maintain an FPG of 80 to 100 mg/dL while avoiding hypoglycemia. The FDC of IGlarLixi provided significantly greater HbA1c and PPG reductions than glargine 100 units/mL or lixisenatide (**TABLE 2**).

Patients treated with IGlarLixi lost 0.3 kg of body weight compared with a weight gain of 1.1 kg for patients treated with glargine. Significantly more patients reached the HbA1c target <7.0% with IGlarLixi (74% vs 59% vs 33%). Documented symptomatic hypoglycemia (blood glucose ≤70 mg/dL) was similar with IGlarLixi and glargine, but lower with lixisenatide. Significantly more patients reached the HbA1c target <7.0% with no weight gain and no documented symptomatic hypoglycemia with IGlarLixi than with glargine (32% vs 19%, respectively). The incidence of gastrointestinal (GI) adverse events with IGlarLixi compared with lixisenatide and glargine, respectively, was 9.6% vs 24.0% vs 3.6% for nausea; 3.2% vs 6.4% vs 1.5% for vomiting; and 9.0% vs 9.0% vs 4.3% for diarrhea. Nausea was the most common GI reason for discontinuation, occurring in 0.4%, 2.6%, and 0% of IGlarLixi, lixisenatide, and glargine patients, respectively.

The second trial compared IGlarLixi with glargine in patients inadequately controlled with basal insulin with or without up to 2 oral glucose-lowering medications.[35] Patients com-

**TABLE 2** Studies of fixed-ratio combinations of insulin glargine/lixisenatide and insulin degludec/liraglutide

| Population/baseline treatment | Trial treatment | Blood glucose changes from randomization | Weight change | Hypoglycemia (patients/event-year) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Insulin glargine/lixisenatide** | | | | |
| MET ± 1 OAD[34]<br>Screening:<br>HbA1c: 8.2%-8.3%<br>4-week run-in metformin optimization<br>Baseline:<br>HbA1c: 8.1%<br>FPG: 176-178 mg/dL<br>PPG: 263-274 mg/dL<br>N=1170 | MET +<br>IGlarLixi[a]<br>or<br>Glargine[a]<br>or<br>Lixisenatide 20[b] mcg/d × 30 weeks | HbA1c: -1.6% vs -1.3% vs -0.9%<br>FPG: -63 mg/dL vs -59 mg/dL vs -27 mg/dL<br>PPG: -103 mg/dL vs -59 mg/dL vs -83 mg/dL<br>2-h PPG excursion: -41.7 mg/dL vs -3.2 mg/dL vs -58.1 mg/dL<br>% HbA1c <7.0%: 74% vs 59% vs 33% | -0.3 kg vs 1.1 kg vs -2.3 kg | Symptomatic[c]: 1.4 vs 1.2 vs 0.3<br>Severe: 0 vs <.01 vs 0 |
| Basal insulin ± OADs[35]<br>Screening:<br>HbA1c: 8.5%<br>FPG: 142-144 mg/dL<br>6-week run-in metformin and basal insulin optimization<br>Baseline:<br>HbA1c: 8.1%<br>FPG: 131-133 mg/dL<br>N=736 | MET +<br>IGlarLixi[a]<br>or<br>Glargine[a] x 30 weeks | HbA1c: -1.1% vs -0.6%<br>FPG: -7 mg/dL vs -9 mg/dL<br>PPG: -85 mg/dL vs -25 mg/dL<br>2-h PPG excursion: -70 mg/dL vs -9 mg/dL<br>% HbA1c <7.0%: 55% vs 30% | -0.7 kg vs 0.7 kg | Symptomatic[c]: 3.0 vs 4.2<br>Severe: 0.02 vs <0.01 |

CONTINUED

pleted a 6-week run-in, during which time glargine was either introduced or continued and stabilized or further titrated, and oral glucose-lowering medications other than metformin were stopped. The HbA1c decreased from 8.5% to 8.1% during the run-in phase. Patients with HbA1c of 7.0% to 10.0%, FPG ≤140 mg/dL, and glargine dose of 20 to 50 units were randomized to 30 weeks of open-label treatment with IGlarLixi or glargine and the doses titrated to a maximum of 60 units/d glargine and 20 mcg/d lixisenatide to achieve and maintain an FPG of 80 to 100 mg/dL while avoiding hypoglycemia.

The fixed-ratio combination of IGlarLixi provided significantly greater HbA1c and PPG reductions compared with glargine 100 units/mL (**TABLE 2**). Patients treated with IGlarLixi lost 0.7 kg compared with a weight gain of 0.7 kg for patients treated with glargine. Significantly more patients reached the HbA1c target <7.0% with IGlarLixi (55% vs 30%). Patients treated with IGlarLixi experienced fewer events of documented symptomatic hypoglycemia than patients treated with glargine; the rates of severe hypoglycemia were low. Significantly more patients treated with IGlarLixi reached the HbA1c target <7.0% with no weight gain and no documented symptomatic hypoglycemia than with glargine (20% vs 9%, respectively). The incidence of GI adverse events was higher with IGlarLixi than glargine, with nausea causing discontinuation in 1.1% and 0% of patients, respectively.

### Insulin degludec/liraglutide

The fixed-ratio combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide (IDegLira), was studied in a 26-week, randomized, double-blind study with a 26-week extension.[36,37] Patients with T2DM inadequately controlled with metformin with or without pioglitazone were randomized to IDegLira, degludec, or liraglutide for 26 weeks. IDegLira and degludec were titrated to achieve an FPG of 72 to 90 mg/dL; the maximum daily dose of IDegLira was 50 units of degludec and 1.8 mg of liraglutide.[36] There was no maximum dose of degludec. The dose of single-agent liraglutide was initiated at 0.6 mg/d and titrated to 1.8 mg/d over 2 weeks. In the preplanned extension, patients continued their allocated treatment for an additional 26 weeks.

At the end of 26 weeks, the HbA1c reduction with IDegLira was noninferior to degludec and significantly greater than liraglutide (**TABLE 2**).[36] The FPG reduction with IDegLira was similar to degludec but greater than with liraglutide. Reductions in the PPG increment after main meals with IDegLira were significantly greater than with degludec

**TABLE 2 Studies of fixed-ratio combinations of insulin glargine/lixisenatide and insulin degludec/liraglutide (*continued*)**

| Population/baseline treatment | Trial treatment | Blood glucose changes from randomization | Weight change | Hypoglycemia (patients/event-year) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Insulin degludec/liraglutide** | | | | |
| MET ± PIO[36]<br>HbA1c: 8.3%<br>FPG:162-169 mg/dL<br>N=1660 | MET ± PIO +<br>IDegLira[d]<br>or<br>Degludec[d]<br>or<br>Liraglutide 1.8[e] mg/d × 26 weeks | HbA1c: -1.9% vs -1.4% vs -1.3%<br>FPG: -65 mg/dL vs -65 mg/dL vs -32 mg/dL<br>% HbA1c <7.0%: 81% vs 65% vs 60% | -0.5 kg vs 1.6 kg vs -3.0 kg | Confirmed[f]: 1.8 vs 2.6 vs 0.2<br>Severe[f,g]: 0.4% vs 0.5% vs 0% |
| 26-week extension of the above trial[37]<br>N=1311 | MET ± PIO +<br>IDegLira[d]<br>or<br>Degludec[d]<br>or<br>Liraglutide 1.8 mg/d × 26 weeks (52 weeks total) | HbA1c[h]: -1.8% vs -1.4% vs -1.2%<br>FPG[h]: -62 mg/dL vs -61 mg/dL vs -30 mg/dL<br>% HbA1c <7.0%[h]: 78% vs 63% vs 57% | -0.4 kg vs 2.3 kg vs -3 kg | Confirmed[f]: 1.8 vs 2.8 vs 0.2<br>Severe: 0.4% vs 0.5% vs 0.5%<br>Nocturnal: 0.2 vs 0.4 vs 0.02 |
| Basal insulin + MET ± SU/MEG[38]<br>HbA1c: 8.7%-8.8%<br>FPG: 173-175 mg/dL<br>N=398 | MET +<br>IDegLira[d]<br>or<br>Degludec[d] × 26 weeks | HbA1c: -1.9% vs -0.9%<br>FPG: -62 mg/dL vs -46 mg/dL<br>HbA1c <7%: vs 60% vs 23% | -2.7 kg vs 0 kg | Confirmed[f]: 1.5 vs 2.6<br>Severe: 0.5% vs 0%<br>Nocturnal[i]: 0.22 vs 0.32 |

**Abbreviations:** BG, blood glucose; FPG, fasting plasma glucose; HbA1c, glycated hemoglobin; IDegLira, insulin degludec/liraglutide; IGlarLixi, insulin glargine/lixisenatide; MEG, meglitinide; MET, metformin; OAD, oral glucose-lowering drug; PIO, pioglitazone; PPG, postprandial glucose; SU, sulfonylurea.

[a]Titrated to achieve a FPG of 80-100 mg/dL to a maximum of 20 mcg/d lixisenatide (if applicable) and 60 units/d glargine with no hypoglycemia.

[b]Initial dose of 10 mcg/d for 2 weeks, then 20 mcg/d.

[c]Hypoglycemia defined as typical symptoms with self-measured blood glucose ≤70 mg/dL.

[d]Titrated to achieve an FPG of 72-90 mg/dL; the maximum daily dose of IDegLira 50 units of degludec and 1.8 mg of liraglutide; there was no limit to the dose of degludec.

[e]Liraglutide initiated at 0.6 mg/d and increased by 0.6 mg per week to a maximum of 1.8 mg/d.

[f]Hypoglycemia requiring assistance (severe) or episodes in which self-measured blood glucose was <56 mg/dL with or without symptoms.

[g]Percent of patients.

[h]Changes from baseline (week 0) to week 52.

[i]Hypoglycemia occurring between 0001 and 0559 h.

and similar to liraglutide. Body weight decreased 0.5 kg with IDegLira and increased 1.6 kg with degludec. Significantly more patients treated with IDegLira reached the HbA1c target <7.0% than patients treated with degludec or liraglutide. Significantly more patients treated with IDegLira reached the HbA1c target <7.0% without weight gain or hypoglycemia than patients treated with degludec but not liraglutide (36% vs 14% vs 52%, respectively). Confirmed hypoglycemia (ie, requiring assistance or blood glucose <56 mg/dL) occurred less frequently in the IDegLira group than in the degludec group but more frequently than in the liraglutide group. The incidence of GI adverse events with IDegLira compared with liraglutide and degludec, respectively, was 9% vs 20% vs 4% for nausea; 4% vs 8% vs 1% for vomiting; and 8% vs 13% vs 5% for diarrhea. Discontinuation due to an adverse event occurred in 1.2%, 5.8%, and 1.9% of IDegLira, liraglutide, and degludec patients, respectively.

Results of the 26-week extension confirmed the results of the initial 26-week study, demonstrating the sustainability of the benefits of IDegLira compared with its components in glycemic efficacy, safety, and tolerability.[37]

The efficacy and safety of IDegLira also has been studied in patients taking basal insulin and metformin with or without sulfonylurea/meglitinide therapy.[38] Patients were randomized to IDegLira or degludec; the degludec dose was titrated to achieve an FPG of 72 to 90 mg/dL. After 26 weeks, the HbA1c reduction was significantly greater with IDegLira than with degludec at equivalent insulin doses (**TABLE 2**).[38] More patients treated with IDegLira achieved HbA1c <7% without any confirmed hypoglycemia during the

last 12 weeks of treatment and without weight gain compared with degludec (40% vs 8.5%, respectively). Overall adverse events, including hypoglycemia, were similar and the incidence of nausea was low in both groups.

## SUMMARY

The generally progressive nature of T2DM requires that treatment be intensified to maintain glycemic control. However, delays in treatment intensification are common, thereby unnecessarily exposing patients to complications of hyperglycemia. One strategy to promote treatment adherence is the use of FDC products. Many such products containing metformin with another oral antihyperglycemic agent are available and have shown improved patient adherence compared with the same medications given separately. Glycemic control is improved and patients report greater satisfaction with titratable fixed-ratio combination products. Other titratable fixed-ratio combination products consisting of a basal insulin analog and a GLP-1RA were recently approved in the United States based on results of studies showing improved glycemic control and other benefits, such as mitigation of weight gain and fewer GI adverse events, compared with the same medications given separately. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Inzucchi SE, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, et al. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes, 2015: A patient-centered approach: update to a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2015;38(1):140-149.
2. Garber AJ, Abrahamson MJ, Barzilay JI, et al. Consensus Statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the Comprehensive Type 2 Diabetes Management Algorithm—2016 Executive Summary. *Endocr Pract.* 2016;22(1):84-113.
3. Khunti K, Wolden ML, Thorsted BL, Andersen M, Davies MJ. Clinical inertia in people with type 2 diabetes: a retrospective cohort study of more than 80,000 people. *Diabetes Care.* 2013;36(11):3411-3417.
4. Aujoulat I, Jacquemin P, Rietzschel E, et al. Factors associated with clinical inertia: an integrative review. *Adv Med Educ Pract.* 2014;5:141-147.
5. Paul SK, Klein K, Thorsted BL, Wolden ML, Khunti K. Delay in treatment intensification increases the risks of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Cardiovasc Diabetol.* 2015;14:100.
6. Shah AD, Langenberg C, Rapsomaniki E, et al. Type 2 diabetes and incidence of cardiovascular diseases: a cohort study in 1.9 million people. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol.* 2015;3(2):105-113.
7. Seshasai SR, Kaptoge S, Thompson A, et al. Diabetes mellitus, fasting glucose, and risk of cause-specific death. *N Engl J Med.* 2011;364(9):829-841.
8. Haffner SM, Lehto S, Ronnemaa T, Pyorala K, Laakso M. Mortality from coronary heart disease in subjects with type 2 diabetes and in nondiabetic subjects with and without prior myocardial infarction. *N Engl J Med.* 1998;339(4):229-234.
9. Giorda CB, Avogaro A, Maggini M, et al. Recurrence of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes: epidemiology and risk factors. *Diabetes Care.* 2008;31(11):2154-2159.
10. Sarwar N, Gao P, Seshasai SR, et al. Diabetes mellitus, fasting blood glucose concentration, and risk of vascular disease: a collaborative meta-analysis of 102 prospective studies. *Lancet.* 2010;375(9733):2215-2222.
11. UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). *Lancet.* 1998;352(9131):837-853.
12. Stratton IM, Adler AI, Neil HA, on behalf of the UK Prospective Diabetes Study. Association of glycaemia with macrovascular and microvascular complications of type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 35): prospective observational study. *BMJ.* 2000;321(7258):405-412.
13. The DECODE Study Group. Glucose tolerance and mortality: comparison of WHO and American Diabetes Association diagnostic criteria. The DECODE study group. European Diabetes Epidemiology Group. Diabetes Epidemiology: Collaborative analysis Of Diagnostic criteria in Europe. *Lancet.* 1999;354(9179):617-621.
14. The DECODE Study Group. Glucose tolerance and cardiovascular mortality: comparison of fasting and 2-hour diagnostic criteria. *Arch Intern Med.* 2001;161(3):397-405.
15. Meigs JB, Nathan DM, D'Agostino RB Sr, Wilson PW. Fasting and postchallenge glycemia and cardiovascular disease risk: the Framingham Offspring Study. *Diabetes Care.* 2002;25(10):1845-1850.
16. de Vegt F, Dekker JM, Ruhe HG, et al. Hyperglycaemia is associated with all-cause and cardiovascular mortality in the Hoorn population: the Hoorn Study. *Diabetologia.* 1999;42(8):926-931.
17. Lenzen M, Ryden L, Ohrvik J, et al. Diabetes known or newly detected, but not impaired glucose regulation, has a negative influence on 1-year outcome in patients with coronary artery disease: a report from the Euro Heart Survey on diabetes and the heart. *Eur Heart J.* 2006;27(24):2969-2974.
18. Booth GL, Kapral MK, Fung K, Tu JV. Relation between age and cardiovascular disease in men and women with diabetes compared with non-diabetic people: a population-based retrospective cohort study. *Lancet.* 2006;368(9529):29-36.
19. Holman RR, Paul SK, Bethel MA, Matthews DR, Neil HA. 10-year follow-up of intensive glucose control in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2008;359(15):1577-1589.
20. Skyler JS, Bergenstal R, Bonow RO, et al. Intensive glycemic control and the prevention of cardiovascular events: implications of the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VA diabetes trials: a position statement of the American Diabetes Association and a scientific statement of the American College of Cardiology Foundation and the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2009;119(2):351-357.
21. Monnier L, Lapinski H, Colette C. Contributions of fasting and postprandial plasma glucose increments to the overall diurnal hyperglycemia of type 2 diabetic patients: variations with increasing levels of HbA(1c). *Diabetes Care.* 2003;26(3):881-885.
22. Cheong C, Barner JC, Lawson KA, Johnsrud MT. Patient adherence and reimbursement amount for antidiabetic fixed-dose combination products compared with dual therapy among Texas Medicaid recipients. *Clin Ther.* 2008;30(10):1893-1907.
23. Lokhandwala T, Smith N, Sternhufvud C, Sorstadius E, Lee WC, Mukherjee J. A retrospective study of persistence, adherence, and health economic outcomes of fixed-dose combination vs. loose-dose combination of oral anti-diabetes drugs. *J Med Econ.* 2016;19(3):203-212.
24. Pan F, Chernew ME, Fendrick AM. Impact of fixed-dose combination drugs on adherence to prescription medications. *J Gen Intern Med.* 2008;23(5):611-614.
25. Barner JC. Adherence to oral antidiabetic agents with pioglitazone and metformin: comparison of fixed-dose combination therapy with monotherapy and loose-dose combination therapy. *Clin Ther.* 2011;33(9):1281-1288.
26. Williams SA, Buysman EK, Hulbert EM, Bergeson JG, Zhang B, Graham J. Hemoglobin A1c outcomes and health care resource use in type 2 diabetes mellitus patients treated with combination oral antidiabetic drugs through step therapy and loose-dose and fixed-dose combinations. *Manag Care.* 2012;21(7):40-48.
27. Benford M, Milligan G, Pike J, Anderson P, Piercy J, Fermer S. Fixed-dose combination antidiabetic therapy: real-world factors associated with prescribing choices and relationship with patient satisfaction and compliance. *Adv Ther.* 2012;29(1):26-40.
28. Han S, Iglay K, Davies MJ, Zhang Q, Radican L. Glycemic effectiveness and medication adherence with fixed-dose combination or coadministered dual therapy of antihyperglycemic regimens: a meta-analysis. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2012;28(6):969-977.
29. Hutchins V, Zhang B, Fleurence RL, Krishnarajah G, Graham J. A systematic review of adherence, treatment satisfaction and costs, in fixed-dose combination regimens in type 2 diabetes. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2011;27(6):1157-1168.
30. Madsbad S. Review of head-to-head comparisons of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2016;18(4):317-332.
31. Vilsboll T, Christensen M, Junker AE, Knop FK, Gluud LL. Effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists on weight loss: systematic review and meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials. *BMJ.* 2012;344:d7771.
32. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(4):311-322.
33. Pfeffer MA, Claggett B, Diaz R, et al. Lixisenatide in patients with type 2 diabetes and acute coronary syndrome. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(23):2247-2257.
34. Rosenstock J, Aronson R, Grunberger G, et al. Benefits of LixiLan, a titratable fixed-ratio combination of insulin glargine plus lixisenatide, versus insulin glargine and lixisenatide monocomponents in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with oral agents: the LixiLan-O Randomized Trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2016;39(11):2026-2035.
35. Aroda VR, Rosenstock J, Wysham C, et al. Efficacy and safety of LixiLan, a titratable fixed-ratio combination of insulin glargine plus lixisenatide in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled on basal insulin and metformin: the LixiLan-L Randomized Trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2016;39(11):1972-1980.
36. Gough SC, Bode B, Woo V, et al. Efficacy and safety of a fixed-ratio combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide (IDegLira) compared with its components given alone: results of a phase 3, open-label, randomised, 26-week, treat-to-target trial in insulin-naive patients with type 2 diabetes. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol.* 2014;2(11):885-893.
37. Gough SC, Bode BW, Woo VC, et al. One-year efficacy and safety of a fixed combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide in patients with type 2 diabetes: results of a 26-week extension to a 26-week main trial. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2015;17(10):965-973.
38. Buse JB, Vilsboll T, Thurman J, et al. Contribution of liraglutide in the fixed-ratio combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide (IDegLira). *Diabetes Care.* 2014; 37(11):2926-2933.

# Diagnosis of Cirrhosis and Evaluation of Hepatic Encephalopathy: Common Errors and Their Significance for the PCP

Steven L. Flamm, MD

## CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

### LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1. Identify strategies to improve early detection of liver cirrhosis and its complications
2. Describe the evidence linking alterations in the human microbiome with liver disease and complications such as hepatic encephalopathy
3. Describe results of preliminary investigations showing improved health outcomes in patients with liver cirrhosis managed with treatments intended to restore the gut microbiome

### FACULTY DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians adheres to the conflict of interest policy of the ACCME and the AMA. It is the policy of Illinois AFP to ensure balance, independence, objectivity, and scientific rigor in all its educational activities. All individuals in a position to control the content in our programs are expected to disclose any relationships they may have with commercial companies whose products or Services may be mentioned so that participants may evaluate the objectivity of the presentations. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty. Only those participants who have no conflict of interest or who agree to an identified resolution process prior to their participation were involved in the CME activity.

### FACULTY DISCLOSURES

Dr. Flamm discloses that he is on the advisory board and speakers' bureau for Salix Pharmaceuticals.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support and Michael Hanak, MD, CME reviewer disclosed no relevant financial relationship or interest with a proprietary entity producing, marketing, reselling or distributing health care goods or services.

This program does not include any discussion or demonstration of any pharmaceuticals or medical devices that are not approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) or that are considered "off-label."

### SPONSORSHIP

This educational activity is sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians and Primary Care Education Consortium.

### SUPPORTER

This activity is supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals

### ACCREDITATION

The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians (IAFP)/Family Practice Education Network (FPEN) is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

### CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 - The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.00 AMA PRA Category 1 credit™.

### METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and on completion, **go to www.pceconsortium.org/liver to complete the online evaluation and receive your certificate of completion.**

Release Date: 1 April 2017
Expiration Date: 31 March 2018

**Steven L. Flamm, MD,** Chief, Liver Transplantation Program, Professor of Medicine, Northwestern Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL

DISCLOSURES
Dr. Flamm discloses that he is on the advisory board and speakers' bureau for Salix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

SUPPORT
This educational activity is sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians and Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals.

## CIRRHOSIS – EPIDEMIOLOGY AND UNDERRECOGNITION

Cirrhosis has become the focus of greater attention in recent years largely because of the increasing prevalence of 2 of its most common causes: chronic viral hepatitis and steatohepatitis (a subset of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease [NAFLD]).[1] Cirrhosis is the result of progressive destruction and regeneration of the liver parenchyma due to chronic liver disease (CLD). Cirrhosis may be more common than previously thought, with an estimated prevalence of 0.27% in adults in the United States, according to data from the National Health

and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES).[2] The 2-year mortality rate is estimated to be 26.4%.[2] Surprisingly, 69% of adults with cirrhosis assessed in NHANES reported they were unaware of having liver disease, highlighting the possibility of many undiagnosed cases of cirrhosis.

One of the largest risk groups for CLD are people with NAFLD, which afflicts approximately 30% to 40% of the population and is projected to become the single most common indication for liver transplantation in the United States over the next 2 decades.[3,4] However, the results of a 2013 survey suggest that the importance of NAFLD appears to be under-recognized among primary care providers (PCPs).[3] The survey results showed that less than half of PCPs screened patients with diabetes and obesity for NAFLD and only one-quarter of PCPs referred patients with NAFLD to a hepatologist for evaluation.

This underdiagnosis of cirrhosis may be compounded by the use of liver function enzyme blood tests as the basis for current strategies to identify liver disease in the general population, even though they are nonspecific markers of liver injury and may be normal in patients with significant liver disease.[5] One study of 504 patients with risk factors for cirrhosis showed that 72% of patients with elevated liver stiffness (ie, diminished elastic property of liver tissue), 60% (12 of 20) with liver fibrosis on biopsy, and 91% (10 of 11) diagnosed with cirrhosis had a normal alanine aminotransferase (ALT).[5]

In addition, the general absence of symptoms in early stages of liver disease often delays diagnosis.[5] Compensated cirrhosis is defined by the development of clinically evident complications of liver disease (eg, esophageal varices, ascites, jaundice, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, hepatic encephalopathy, portal hypertension, hepatocellular carcinoma). Patients with compensated cirrhosis do not have symptoms related to their cirrhosis and are often not recognized until these complications manifest. At that point, median survival for decompensated cirrhosis is reduced drastically (<2 years vs >12 years for compensated cirrhosis).[6,7]

Because PCPs are the first medical contact for the majority of patients, they can play a key role in identifying patients who are at risk for, or who have symptoms due to, CLD. They can also collaborate with the specialist in managing and preventing cirrhosis-related complications, such as screening for hepatocellular carcinoma, which is vital, as early detection is associated with a high rate of cure.

## CLINICAL PEARLS FOR DETECTING CIRRHOSIS

The clinical presentation of patients with cirrhosis, even those with severe disease, is often asymptomatic, with a completely normal or only mildly abnormal liver panel. Moreover, patients can have cirrhosis and feel well early in the course of the disease, although their quality of life may be affected. When patients become symptomatic, it is often too late to reverse the clinical course. For these reasons and to facilitate early intervention, PCPs are encouraged to identify patients at risk for cirrhosis and to be vigilant for subtle signs and symptoms so that a diagnosis can be made before the development of serious complications, such as hepatocellular carcinoma or esophageal and gastric varices.[1] Subtle signs and symptoms include abdominal swelling, elevated ALT or aspartate aminotransferase (AST)/ALT ratio, platelet count <150,000/L, elevated alkaline phosphatase, bilirubin >1.1 mg/dL, serum albumin <2.5 g/dL, and prothrombin time <100%.

Risk factors for cirrhosis in the patient's medical history merit attention. These include body mass index (BMI), presence of diabetes mellitus or hyperlipidemia, other autoimmune disease, family history of liver disease, sexual orientation, history of intravenous drug abuse (even in the remote past), history of blood transfusion in the remote past, and history of significant alcohol use (even in the past).

Measurement of the serum ammonia level is generally to be avoided, since it is rarely helpful for diagnosis or assessment of treatment response. Thrombocytopenia (platelet count <150 x $10^9$/L) is often an incidental finding on routine laboratory testing, but it is often indicative of portal hypertension and cirrhosis, even in the absence of an abnormal liver panel.[8] In a study of 223 patients with low platelets, liver disease was the cause in 92 (42%), including 19 with no or mild abnormalities in the liver panel.[8] Elevation of serum prothrombin time or International Normalized Ratio (INR) may indicate hypoalbuminemia or a decreased ability of the liver to synthesize clotting factors. However, these are uncommon findings in compensated cirrhosis.

Given the high disease burden of NAFLD in patients with metabolic syndrome or diabetes, obtaining a random ALT and AST in these patients may be reasonable, since up to 80% of patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH; the subset of NAFLD patients most likely to develop cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma) may be identified based on elevated transaminases.[4] Alkaline phosphatase and/or gamma-glutamyltransferase may be mildly elevated, but bilirubin typically remains normal unless advanced disease is present. It is important to keep in mind that normal liver function tests (LFTs) do not rule out cirrhosis.

Other patients in whom CLD should be suspected despite a normal liver panel are those with "CLD stigmata" (ie, vascular spiders, palmar erythema, and muscle wasting).[7] A palpable left liver lobe, hepatomegaly, and splenomegaly may also be suggestive of cirrhosis.

Liver biopsy is the gold standard for diagnosing and staging liver fibrosis but has several limitations: invasiveness, cost, poor patient acceptance, and risk of complications.[7]

**TABLE Clinical description of hepatic encephalopathy based on West Haven Criteria[13]**

| WHC including MHE | ISHEN | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Unimpaired | | No encephalopathy at all, no history of hepatic encephalopathy |
| Minimal | Covert | Psychometric or neuropsychological alterations of tests exploring psychomotor speed/ executive functions or neurophysiological alterations without clinical evidence of mental change |
| Grade I | | Trivial lack of awareness, euphoria or anxiety, shortened attention span, impairment of addition or subtraction, altered sleep rhythm |
| Grade II | Overt | Lethargy or apathy, disorientation for time, obvious personality change, inappropriate behavior, dyspraxia, asterixis |
| Grade III | | Somnolence to semi-stupor, responsiveness to stimuli, confusion, gross disorientation, bizarre behavior |
| Grade IV | | Coma |

**Abbreviations:** ISHEN, International Society for Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism; MHE, minimal hepatic encephalopathy; WHC, West Haven Criteria.

**Adapted from:** Vilstrup H, Amodio P, Bajaj J, et al. *Hepatology*. 2014;60(2):715-735, p. 719, Table 2. Copyright © 2014 by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases.

Several noninvasive imaging and laboratory-based tests for diagnosis and staging of fibrosis have been developed, including elastography techniques, which measure mechanical property (stiffness) of liver. Ultrasound, computed tomography, and magnetic resonance imaging have been applied with varying degrees of success.[7] Fibrosis can also be detected using noninvasive scoring systems that utilize different combination of serum surrogate markers for liver disease, eg, Fibrosis-4 (FIB-4) index, AST-to-platelet ratio index (APRI), and the BMI, AST/ALT ratio, diabetes (BARD) score.[9]

Patients diagnosed with cirrhosis should undergo liver cancer screening semiannually with liver imaging using ultrasound.[10] In addition, endoscopy should be performed. If moderate to large varices are present, a non-cardioselective beta-blocker is indicated to prevent variceal bleeding; the patient also should be instructed to avoid aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.[11] Protein intake generally is limited to 1 g/kg of body weight.

## DETECTING HEPATIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) is a common and major complication of cirrhosis that impacts quality of life, increases the risk of accidents, and is associated with significant morbidity and mortality.[12] Hepatic encephalopathy encompasses a spectrum of cognitive and motor abnormalities that range from minimal deficits, detected only with psychometric or neuropsychological tests and possibly subtle personality changes reported by caregivers (covert HE [CHE]), to progressively greater disturbances in cognition and motor dysfunction (overt HE [OHE]), to coma (**TABLE**).[13]

The neuronal dysfunction of HE is due to hyperammonemia, which is a consequence of impaired metabolic capacity of the urea cycle in the liver and intra- and extrahepatic portosystemic shunting of blood related to portal hypertension.[14,15]

The number of hospitalizations associated with a diagnosis of HE has increased approximately 10% annually, with more than 610,000 hospital discharges for patients with HE in 2014.[16] In one study, an estimated 50% of cirrhotic patients had underlying CHE, and 30% developed an episode of OHE over 13 months.[17] Once OHE occurs, patients have a 40% risk for recurrence within 1 year despite standard treatment with lactulose.[13] OHE is associated with diminished survival (40%-50% at 1 year and approximately 20% at 3 years).[14,18,19]

Symptoms of HE, graded by the West Haven Criteria (WHC), are relatively nonspecific (**TABLE**), making a definitive diagnosis of HE challenging. Consequently, HE remains a diagnosis of exclusion.[20] The patient history should focus on changes in cognition, behavior, sleep patterns, work performance, and driving performance. A caregiver may be able to provide history to assist a PCP in detecting changes. A physical examination should evaluate patients for the presence of stigmata of cirrhosis and asterixis. Other causes of encephalopathy should be excluded (eg, electrolyte disturbances, hypoglycemia, uremia, sepsis, thyroid dysfunction). Obtaining ammonia levels is generally not recommended, given the limited utility of a single value in the diagnosis of HE and the nonspecificity of elevated ammonia levels for HE.[14]

PCPs play an important role in identifying the condition because they will often see the patients when HE is in its early stages, and its neuropsychiatric manifestations are subtle. As PCPs are also likely to see patients more frequently and over a longer span of time than specialists, they are more likely to recognize these subtle changes.[21]

Given the poor prognosis associated with the development of OHE, prompt detection, workup, and referral are vital to allow for early initiation of appropriate management (**FIGURE**).[18] The most important step in the management of HE is identification and treatment of precipitating factors (eg, infections, gastrointestinal [GI] bleeding, overdiuresis, vomiting/diarrhea, electrolyte disorder, constipation).[20] Medications used to treat HE are primarily directed at reducing serum ammonia levels.

## GUT MICROBIOME IMPLICATIONS FOR THE TREATMENT OF HEPATIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

The pharmacologic basis for some of the treatments for HE is supported by a growing body of evidence regarding the interactions between the gut microbiome and its human host. The human microbiome is the collective genome (ie, genetic material) of the more than a thousand microorganisms living in association with the human body, the vast majority of which reside in the distal gut.[22,23] This ecological system interacts with internal and external factors to help maintain overall health of the individual.[24] Much of our current knowledge in this area comes from the Human Microbiome Project and Human Gut Microbiome Initiative—programs focused on identifying and characterizing gut microorganisms found in healthy and diseased humans. [22,23]

In selected conditions, including inflammatory bowel diseases, NAFLD, obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and cirrhosis, changes in the composition of the gut microbiota and proinflammatory activities are thought to contribute to disease pathophysiology.[22] The altered gut microbiota (dysbiosis) associated with cirrhosis contributes to hyperammonemia and a systemic pro-inflammatory milieu that can potentiate neuroinflammation, brain edema, and neuronal dysfunction.[25] With the progression of cirrhosis, it is hypothesized that the hyperammonemia and the pro-inflammatory potentiation occur via the relative reduction in autochthonous (indigenous) commensal organisms and the increase in microbes such as *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Streptococcaceae,* which can produce endotoxin and ammonia through their urease activity, respectively.[25] While knowledge is evolving regarding various other mechanisms that may contribute to dysbiosis and its functional consequences for liver disease, our current understanding helps inform treatment approaches for hepatic encephalopathy.[26]

## TREATMENT OPTIONS FOR HEPATIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

### Probiotics

Probiotics are live, nonpathogenic microbiologic dietary supplements that alter the intestinal microflora environment. A 2016 meta-analysis of probiotics for management of CHE or OHE included 14 trials and 1152 patients.[27] Probiotics had no impact on the overall mortality compared to either lactulose or no treatment/placebo. When probiotics were compared to no treatment/placebo, they were associated with significant improvement in minimal HE (MHE) (odds ratio [OR], 3.91; 95% confidence interval [CI], 2.25-6.80; $P<.00001$), decreased hospitalization rates (OR, 0.53; 95% CI, 0.33-0.86; $P=.01$) and decreased progression to OHE (OR, 0.40; 95% CI, 0.26-0.60; $P<.0001$). Compared to lactulose, however, probiotics did not show a significant difference in any of these outcomes.

Although the mechanisms of HE improvement remain somewhat uncertain, probiotics may act by decreasing colonization by pathogenic bacteria, blocking epithelial attachment, decreasing the production and absorption of ammonia, and altering gut permeability.[28]

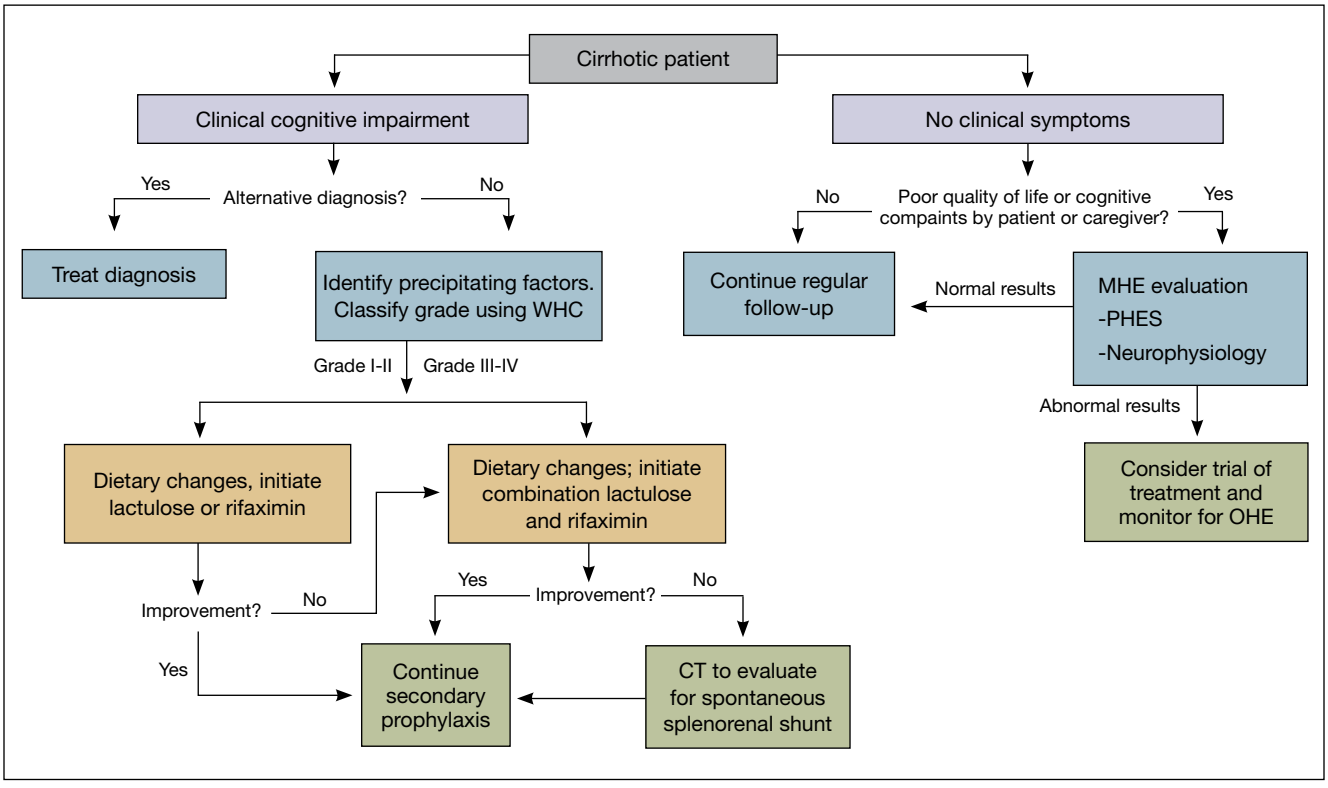
A 2011 Cochrane review of probiotics for patients with HE included 7 trials and 550 patients.[29] Compared to no treatment, probiotics were associated with reduced plasma ammonia levels but no significant differences in all-cause mortality, recovery from HE, adverse events, quality of life, or change of/withdrawal from treatment. Compared to lactulose, probiotics were associated with no differences in lack of recovery, adverse events, change of/withdrawal from treatment, plasma ammonia concentration, or change in plasma ammonia concentration.[29] For these reasons and because of the wide variability in the content of probiotics, probiotics are not currently recommended as treatment for HE.

## DIETARY MODIFICATION

Protein calorie malnutrition is a common occurrence in patients with HE and is associated with poor prognosis.[18] Contributors include frequent body fluid removal via paracentesis, anemia from GI bleeding, and low-protein diets (previously recommended based on the presumption that they led to reduced ammonia production).[14,18]

Maintaining adequate protein intake is essential to prevent muscle wasting, as skeletal muscle is the next largest site of ammonia metabolism after the liver.[18] For patients with HE, the International Society for Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism (ISHEN) recommends that the daily energy intake should be 35 to 40 kcal/kg ideal body weight with daily protein intake of 1.2 to 1.5 g/kg ideal body weight.[30] Meals should be small and evenly distributed during the day, with a late-night snack of complex carbohydrates to help minimize protein utilization. Patients should be encouraged to adhere to diets rich in vegetable and dairy protein. Branched-chain amino acid supplements may be of value in patients intolerant of dairy protein. Increasing dietary fiber may also be beneficial.[30]

**FIGURE** **Evaluation and management of hepatic encephalopathy[18]**




**Abbreviations:** CT, computed tomography; MHE, minimal hepatic encephalopathy; OHE, overt hepatic encephalopathy; PHES, Psychometric Hepatic Encephalopathy Score; WHC, West Haven Criteria.



## LACTULOSE

Nonabsorbable disaccharides, primarily lactulose, have been the mainstay of treatment for HE.[13] Lactulose is degraded by microbiota in the colon to short-chain organic acids, resulting in an acidic environment and an osmotic gradient in the intestinal lumen.[17] The acidic environment is thought to reduce ammonia-producing bacteria and to convert ammonia to nonabsorbable ammonium. The laxative effect results in intestinal cleansing via removal of excess fecal nitrogen.[17]

Lactulose is usually initiated with an oral dose of 30 mL to 45 mL every 1 to 2 hours to produce at least 2 soft bowel movements per day; it is then titrated to a goal of 2 to 3 soft bowel movements a day.[31] Common adverse events of lactulose include flatulence, abdominal discomfort, and diarrhea.[17]

Lactulose has demonstrated variable efficacy in trials (mostly small and underpowered) of patients with HE, but a recent Cochrane review including 38 trials and 1828 patients determined that nonabsorbable disaccharides may be associated with beneficial effects on clinically relevant outcomes compared to placebo/no intervention.[32] These effects included mortality (relative risk [RR], 0.59; 95% CI 0.40-0.87) and reduction of serious complications associated with the underlying liver disease (liver failure, hepatorenal syndrome, and variceal bleeding; RR, 0.47; 95% CI, 0.36-0.60).[32]

## ANTIBIOTICS

The rationale for using antibiotics for cirrhosis is to diminish deaminating enteric bacteria, thus decreasing the production and absorption of ammonia and endotoxins.[33] Neomycin and metronidazole have been used for the treatment of OHE, but limited efficacy and adverse events limit their use.[13] Rifaximin is another antibiotic approved by the US Food and Drug Administration for reducing the risk of OHE recurrence in adults. Rifaximin is a poorly absorbed oral antibiotic with a broad spectrum of activity against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria and anaerobic enteric bacteria that inhibits bacterial protein synthesis.[33] The 2014 guidelines issued by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases/European Association for the Study of the Liver recommend the addition of rifaximin for

prevention of OHE recurrence in patients who have experienced ≥1 bouts of OHE while on lactulose treatment.[13]

In a phase 3 trial to assess the efficacy of rifaximin for prevention of HE in high-risk patients, 299 patients in remission from recurrent HE were randomized to receive placebo or rifaximin 550 mg twice daily for 6 months.[34] Rifaximin significantly reduced the risk of another HE episode (hazard ratio [HR], 0.42; 95% CI, 0.28-0.64; *P*<.001), and of hospitalization involving HE (HR, 0.50; 95% CI, 0.29-0.87; *P*=.01).[34] More than 90% of patients in each treatment group received concomitant lactulose therapy, and the adverse event rate was similar between placebo and rifaximin groups.

Although rifaximin is not currently approved for treatment of OHE, 14 of 19 trials included in a 2014 meta-analysis compared rifaximin to either placebo or active treatment (primarily lactulose or lactitol).[35] Rifaximin increased the proportion of patients who recovered from OHE (RR, 0.59; 95% CI, 0.46-0.76), reduced mortality (RR, 0.68; 95% CI, 0.48-0.97), and had a beneficial effect on secondary prevention of OHE (RR, 1.32; 95% CI, 1.06-1.65). This latter benefit is important since readmission for HE is common. A study that assessed the combination of rifaximin plus lactulose vs lactulose alone for the treatment of OHE showed the combination to be superior in terms of complete reversal of HE (76% vs 50.8% of patients; *P*<.004), decreased mortality (primarily due to sepsis) (23.8% vs 49.1%; *P*<.05), and shorter hospital stay (5.8±3.4 vs 8.2±4.6 days; *P*=.001).[36]

## CONCLUSION

Cirrhosis is more common than previously thought. Because the liver panel is often normal and the clinical presentation is often asymptomatic, detection of cirrhosis at its earliest stages is often missed in the primary care setting. Consequently, PCPs are encouraged to identify patients at risk for cirrhosis and to be vigilant for subtle signs and symptoms before the development of serious complications, such as hepatic encephalopathy. Treatment has typically been directed at reducing serum ammonia levels. Our evolving knowledge about the pathophysiologic role of gut microbiota disturbances in liver disease, and specifically hepatic encephalopathy, has prompted the development and use of treatments aimed at manipulation of the gut microbiota. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Grattagliano I, Ubaldi E, Portincasa P, Palasciano G. Liver disease: early signs you may be missing. *J Fam Pract.* 2009;58(10):514-521.
2. Scaglione S, Kliethermes S, Cao G, et al. The epidemiology of cirrhosis in the United States: A population-based study. *J Clin Gastroenterol.* 2015;49(8):690-696.
3. Said A, Gagovic V, Malecki K, Givens ML, Nieto FJ. Primary care practitioners survey of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Ann Hepatol.* 2013;12(5):758-765.
4. Spengler EK, Loomba R. Recommendations for diagnosis, referral for liver biopsy, and treatment of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Mayo Clin Proc.* 2015;90(9):1233-1246.
5. Harman DJ, Ryder SD, James MW, et al. Direct targeting of risk factors significantly increases the detection of liver cirrhosis in primary care: a cross-sectional diagnostic study utilising transient elastography. *BMJ Open.* 2015;5(4):e007516.
6. Walker M, El-Serag HB, Sada Y, et al. Cirrhosis is under-recognised in patients subsequently diagnosed with hepatocellular cancer. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther.* 2016;43(5):621-630.
7. Muir AJ. Understanding the complexities of cirrhosis. *Clin Ther.* 2015;37(8):1822-1836.
8. Hancox SH, Smith BC. Liver disease as a cause of thrombocytopenia. *QJM.* 2013;106(5):425-431.
9. Sun W, Cui H, Li N, et al. Comparison of FIB-4 index, NAFLD fibrosis score and BARD score for prediction of advanced fibrosis in adult patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A meta-analysis study. *Hepatol Res.* 2016;46(9):862-870.
10. Bruix J, Sherman M. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma: an update. *Hepatology.* 2011;53(3):1020-1022.
11. Garcia-Tsao G, Sanyal AJ, Grace ND, Carey W. Prevention and management of gastroesophageal varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *Hepatology.* 2007;46(3):922-938.
12. Ditisheim S, Giostra E, Burkhard PR, et al. A capillary blood ammonia bedside test following glutamine load to improve the diagnosis of hepatic encephalopathy in cirrhosis. *BMC Gastroenterol.* 2011;11:134.
13. Vilstrup H, Amodio P, Bajaj J, et al. Hepatic encephalopathy in chronic liver disease: 2014 Practice Guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the European Association for the Study of the Liver. *Hepatology.* 2014;60(2):715-735.
14. NeSmith M, Ahn J, Flamm SL. Contemporary understanding and management of overt and covert hepatic encephalopathy. *Gastroenterol Hepatol (N Y ).* 2016;12(2):91-100.
15. Wijdicks EF. Hepatic encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(17):1660-1670.
16. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. 2014 National statistics - all listed. https://hcupnet.ahrq.gov/#setup. Accessed January 17, 2017.
17. Patidar KR, Bajaj JS. Covert and overt hepatic encephalopathy: diagnosis and management. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2015;13(12):2048-2061.
18. Suraweera D, Sundaram V, Saab S. Evaluation and management of hepatic encephalopathy: current status and future directions. *Gut Liver.* 2016;10(4):509-519.
19. Saab S. Evaluation of the impact of rehospitalization in the management of hepatic encephalopathy. *Int J Gen Med.* 2015;8:165-173.
20. Shawcross DL, Dunk AA, Jalan R, et al. How to diagnose and manage hepatic encephalopathy: a consensus statement on roles and responsibilities beyond the liver specialist. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2016;28(2):146-152.
21. Wakim-Fleming J. Hepatic encephalopathy: suspect it early in patients with cirrhosis. *Cleve Clin J Med.* 2011;78(9):597-605.
22. US National Institutes of Health. NIH human microbiome project. About the HMP. http://hmpdacc.org/overview/about.php. Published 2016. Accessed February 14, 2017.
23. Gordon JI, Ley RE, Wilson R, et al. Washington University. Extending our view of self: the Human Gut Microbiome Initiative (HGMI). https://www.genome.gov/pages/research/sequencing/seqproposals/hgmiseq.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed February 14, 2017.
24. Moraes-Filho JP, Quigley EM. The intestinal microbiota and the role of probiotics in irritable bowel syndrome: a review. *Arq Gastroenterol.* 2015;52(4):331-338.
25. Ahluwalia V, Betrapally NS, Hylemon PB, et al. Impaired gut-liver-brain axis in patients with cirrhosis. *Sci Rep.* 2016;6:26800.
26. Llorente C, Schnabl B. The gut microbiota and liver disease. *Cell Mol Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2015;1(3):275-284.
27. Saab S, Suraweera D, Au J, Saab EG, Alper TS, Tong MJ. Probiotics are helpful in hepatic encephalopathy: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Liver Int.* 2016;36(7):986-993.
28. Sharma BC, Singh J. Probiotics in management of hepatic encephalopathy. *Metab Brain Dis.* 2016;31(6):1295-1301.
29. McGee RG, Bakens A, Wiley K, Riordan SM, Webster AC. Probiotics for patients with hepatic encephalopathy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2011;11:CD008716.
30. Amodio P, Bemeur C, Butterworth R, et al. The nutritional management of hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis: International Society for Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism Consensus. *Hepatology.* 2013;58(1):325-336.
31. Enulose [package insert]. Baltimore, MD: Actavis Mid Atlantic LLC; 2007.
32. Gluud LL, Vilstrup H, Morgan MY. Non-absorbable disaccharides versus placebo/no intervention and lactulose versus lactitol for the prevention and treatment of hepatic encephalopathy in people with cirrhosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2016;4:CD003044.
33. Flamm SL. Rifaximin treatment for reduction of risk of overt hepatic encephalopathy recurrence. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol.* 2011;4(3):199-206.
34. Bass NM, Mullen KD, Sanyal A, et al. Rifaximin treatment in hepatic encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med.* 2010;362(12):1071-1081.
35. Kimer N, Krag A, Møller S, Bendtsen F, Gluud LL. Systematic review with meta-analysis: the effects of rifaximin in hepatic encephalopathy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther.* 2014;40(2):123-132.
36. Sharma BC, Sharma P, Lunia MK, Srivastava S, Goyal R, Sarin SK. A randomized, double-blind, controlled trial comparing rifaximin plus lactulose with lactulose alone in treatment of overt hepatic encephalopathy. *Am J Gastroenterol.* 2013;108(9):1458-1463.

# Role of the Microbiome in Disease: Implications for Treatment of Irritable Bowel Syndrome

Brian E. Lacy, PhD, MD

## CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

**LEARNING OBJECTIVES:**

1. Describe the findings of the Human Microbiome Project and Gut Microbiome Initiative
2. Describe the evidence linking alterations in the human microbiome with disease, including irritable bowel syndrome
3. Describe results of treatments that act upon the gut microbiota in patients with irritable bowel syndrome

**TARGET AUDIENCE**

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge of the gut microbiome and its implications in the primary care management of IBS.

**DISCLOSURES:**

The IAFP adheres to the conflict of interest policy of the ACCME and the AMA. It is the policy of the IAFP to ensure balance, independence, objectivity, and scientific rigor in all its educational activities. All individuals in a position to control the content in our programs are expected to disclose any relationships they may have with commercial companies whose products or services may be mentioned so that participants may evaluate the objectivity of the presentations. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty. Only those participants who have no conflict of interest or who agree to an identified resolution process prior to their participation were involved in the CME activity.

Dr. Lacy discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Ironwood Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; Prometheus Laboratories, Inc.; and Salix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and is a board member for the *American Journal of Gastroenterology*.

Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP, discloses that he is on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and Novo Nordisk Inc. He is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Allergan; Becton, Dickinson and Company; Cempra, Inc.; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; and Mylan N.V.

Allan Wilke, MD, CME Reviewer and Greg Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, disclosed no relevant financial relationship or interest with a proprietary entity producing, marketing, reselling or distributing health care goods or services.

Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network staff and additional staff of PCEC disclosed no relevant financial relationship or interest with a proprietary entity producing, marketing, reselling or distributing health care goods or services.

This program does not include any discussion or demonstration of any pharmaceutical or medical devices that are not approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) or that are considered "off-label."

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

When individuals in a position to control content have reported financial relationships with one or more commercial interests, the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians works with them to resolve such conflicts to ensure that the content presented is free of commercial bias. The content of this activity was vetted by the following mechanisms and modified as required to meet this standard:

Content peer-review by an external CME reviewer

Content validation by internal clinical editorial staff

**SPONSORSHIP**

This educational activity is sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians and Primary Care Education Consortium.

**SUPPORTER**

This activity is supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals.

**ACCREDITATION**

This activity has been planned and implemented in accordance with the Essential Areas and policies of the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) through the joint sponsorship of The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network and Primary Care Education Consortium. The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians (IAFP) / Family Practice Education Network (FPEN) is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

**AMA PRA CATEGORY 1**

The Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network designates this activity, "Role of the Microbiome in Disease: Implications for Treatment of Irritable Bowel Syndrome," for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity.

Release Date: 1 April 2017

Expiration Date: 31 March 2018

**METHOD OF PARTICIPATION**

PHYSICIANS

To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and on completion, **go to www.pceconsortium.org/microbiome to complete the online evaluation and receive your certificate of completion.**

**PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS**

AAPA accepts certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME or a recognized state medical society.

## INTRODUCTION

As many as 1 in 5 Americans have symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), but only about 30% seek medical attention.[1,2] Even so, IBS accounts for approximately 12% of visits to primary care physicians and 28% of referrals to gastroenterologists.[3] With emerging evidence to support some practices, many people with IBS turn to complementary health practices, including dietary manipulation and the use of alternative medicine such as probiotics and prebiotics, to help relieve their symptoms.[1,4,5] Therefore, patients with IBS who seek medical care for their IBS symptoms may have questions about diet and alternative treatments or may be self-managing.

Dietary and some other treatments for IBS are supported by a growing body of evidence, much of which comes from programs such as the Human Microbiome Project and Human Gut Microbiome Initiative, which were intended to identify and characterize microorganisms found in association with both healthy and diseased humans. These programs used state-of-the-art technology to characterize the human microbiome from multiple body sites.[6] This evidence indicates that the gut microbiome plays an important role in IBS and some other gastrointestinal (GI) disorders. The human microbiome is the collective genome (ie, genetic material) of all the microorganisms living in association with the human body, the vast majority of which reside in the distal gut.[7,8] The gut microbiota refers to the complex ecosystem of more than a thousand microbial species inhabiting the intestine, most of which are bacteria, and accounts for 60% of the fecal biomass.[6,9,10] While research is still in its infancy, these programs suggest that microorganisms carry out a range of biological functions critical to the health of the individual.[11]

Emerging evidence also suggests that changes in the composition of the gut microbiota (dysbiosis) correlate with numerous diseases, including type 1 and type 2 diabetes, obesity, asthma, and several cancers, as well as anxiety and depression.[7,12-15] Perhaps least surprising is the increasing evidence implicating gut microbiota alterations in gastrointestinal diseases such as inflammatory bowel disease and IBS.[16]

**Brian E. Lacy, PhD, MD,** Professor of Medicine, Chief, Section of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center, Lebanon, NH

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Lacy discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Ironwood Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; Prometheus Laboratories, Inc.; and Salix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and is a board member for the *American Journal of Gastroenterology*.

SUPPORT

This CME article is jointly sponsored by the Illinois Academy of Family Physicians/Family Practice Education Network and Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by an educational grant from Valeant Pharmaceuticals.

## IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME

### Microbial complications of IBS

The most convincing evidence that suggests gut microbiota are involved in the pathogenesis of IBS is the finding that IBS can develop in predisposed individuals following a bout of infectious gastroenteritis.[17] The odds of developing IBS are increased more than sixfold after an acute GI infection, and the onset of new IBS symptoms after a bout of infectious gastroenteritis is reported by 6% to 18% of IBS patients.[17]

Additional evidence supporting a role for the gut microbiota in IBS include differences in the colonic microbiota between IBS and non-IBS populations, symptomatic response of IBS to antibiotic and probiotic administration, and recent anecdotal reports of responses to fecal microbial transplantation.[11,18-21] Numerous studies have reported differences in the mucosal and/or fecal microbiota of patients with IBS compared with healthy controls, such as reduced diversity of the microbial population, altered proportion of specific bacterial groups, different degree of variability in the microbiota composition, a higher degree of temporal instability, and more abundant mucosal bacteria.[22] Some patients experience small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO), a condition in which bacteria colonize the small intestine, creating localized inflammation, altering intestinal absorption, and potentially using nutrients needed by the body, which in turn causes malnourishment.

While our understanding of the pathophysiologic role of the gut microbiota in IBS is still developing, several possible mechanisms have been proposed. The current working hypothesis is that altered composition and metabolic activity of the gut microbiota activate mucosal innate immune responses and inflammation.[9,17] These processes, in turn, increase mucosal permeability, promote epithelial barrier dysfunction, activate nociceptive sensory pathways, and dysregulate the enteric nervous system.

### Treatment approaches focused on altering the gut microbiome

While our knowledge about the gut microbiome and its role in IBS pathophysiology continue to develop, the gut microbiota has been a therapeutic target for years, if not decades.[17]

#### *Dietary modification*

Diet has been shown to significantly influence the composition and metabolic activity of the gut microbiota. In fact, dietary modification can substantially alter the gut microbiome in as

little as 3 days.[9,23-25] Additionally, 60% to 70% of patients with IBS report a worsening of symptoms after meals, and 50% to 70% report intolerance to various foods.[3]

The most compelling evidence for a beneficial impact of diet on IBS exists for a diet that restricts a group of short-chain carbohydrates known collectively as fermentable oligosaccharides, disaccharides, monosaccharides and polyols (FODMAPs). FODMAPs are found in such foods as wheat, legumes, milk, some fruits, and sorbitol.[4,26] Rapid fermentation of these incompletely absorbed carbohydrates leads to gas production and increased luminal water content, resulting in luminal distention that may account for IBS symptoms.[4] Implementation of a low FODMAP diet for IBS reduces overall gastrointestinal symptoms and individual symptoms such as abdominal pain, bloating, constipation, diarrhea, abdominal distention, and flatulence.[26,27] In a randomized, single-blind, crossover study of 30 patients with IBS and 8 healthy controls who received 21 days of either a low FODMAP or typical Australian diet, 70% of patients with IBS experienced improvement in overall GI symptoms.[28] Dietary intervention guided by specialized dietitians appears to be vital for the success of the diet, which is fairly complex.[26] The ideal length of time for a patient to adhere to a low FODMAP diet has not been adequately studied; however, strict adherence to a low-FODMAP diet is not recommended long-term due to potential risks of inadequate nutrient intake.[26]

Very limited data suggest that gluten may exacerbate IBS symptoms in patients with IBS but not celiac disease whose symptoms are already controlled on a gluten-free diet. This observation suggests that a gluten-free diet may help some patients with IBS.[29] However, a more recent study by the same investigators demonstrated that implementation of a gluten-free diet in patients with IBS already on a low FODMAP diet did not provide added benefit.[30]

Fiber has long been considered a mainstay of therapy for relief of IBS symptoms. The beneficial effects of fiber are thought to reflect colonic fermentation with production of short-chain fatty acids or its action as a prebiotic.[3] A recent systematic review and meta-analysis of 14 trials found moderate-quality evidence that soluble fiber—but not bran fiber—is effective at improving global IBS symptoms and should remain a first-line therapy for IBS, given its affordability and safety.[31]

### *Probiotics and prebiotics*

Prebiotics (eg, fructooligosaccharides and inulin) are ingredients in food that remain undigested and which may stimulate either the growth or the activity of bacteria that are also beneficial to human health.[19] In contrast, probiotics are live microorganisms that, when ingested in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit to the host.[4] Synbiotics combine prebiotics and probiotics, with a potentially synergistic action.[19] There is a paucity of evidence for the efficacy of prebiotics or synbiotics in IBS.[22]

Probiotics, principally those containing *Lactobacillus sp*. and *Bifidobacterium sp*., have been studied extensively as a way to beneficially modulate the GI microbiota in the treatment of IBS.[17,19,32,33] *Lactobacillus sp*. and *Bifidobacterium sp*. modulate several mechanisms that might be implicated in the pathogenesis of IBS, including effects on intestinal microbiota composition, GI dysmotility, visceral hypersensitivity, altered gut epithelium and immune function, and luminal metabolism.[22] Interpreting results from probiotic studies in IBS is challenging due to inclusion of patients with different IBS subtypes and the use of multiple probiotic strains and doses across studies, which may obscure the beneficial effects of individual strains within that species.[19,32]

In a meta-analysis of 35 studies of probiotics vs placebo for IBS, the persistence of IBS symptoms with probiotics was lower, with a relative risk of 0.79 (95% confidence interval, 0.70-0.89). Probiotics reduced abdominal pain, bloating, and flatulence. The number needed to treat (NNT) was 7. Some combinations of probiotics were superior to individual species or strains, although no specific combination was superior to another.[19] Adverse events were more common with probiotics (16.5%) compared with placebo (13.8%), with a number needed to harm (NNH) of 35.[19]

### *Antibiotics*

The alteration of the gut microbiota, and particularly the possible role of an SIBO in at least some patients with IBS, has prompted the evaluation of antibiotics as a treatment for IBS.[22] Neomycin, a nonabsorbable antibiotic, was the first investigated for IBS. Neomycin produced a 50% improvement in global IBS symptoms compared with placebo, but also induced rapid bacterial resistance.[22]

The rifamycin-derivative rifaximin is an oral, nonsystemic, broad-spectrum antibiotic associated with a low bacterial resistance profile and a favorable side-effect profile.[20] Rifaximin appears to have anti-inflammatory, host-response, and gut microbiota modulatory activities.[34] Rifaximin has shown efficacy in several small-scale studies of IBS as well as 2 large-scale, identically designed, phase 3, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter trials (Targeted non-systemic Antibiotic Rifaximin Gut selective Evaluation Treatment [TARGET] 1 and TARGET 2) (**TABLE**).[20,35]

In TARGET 1 and TARGET 2, patients affected by IBS without constipation (N=1258) received either rifaximin 550 mg or placebo 3 times daily for 2 weeks, then were fol-

**TABLE TARGET-1, -2, and -3 trials for rifaximin in the management of irritable bowel syndrome[20,35]**

| Study design | Patients | Treatment | Primary efficacy outcomes | Secondary efficacy outcomes | Safety |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| R, DB, PBO-C; TARGET 1 and TARGET 2 combined | IBS (Rome II criteria) with abdominal pain and discomfort | Rifaximin 550 mg tid (n = 624) vs PBO (n = 634)[a] for 2 weeks | Adequate relief[b] of global IBS symptoms: rifaximin vs PBO: 40.7% vs 31.7%; *P* <.001 | Adequate relief[b] of IBS-related bloating: rifaximin vs PBO, 40.2% vs 30.3%; *P* <.001 | AEs comparable between groups<br>Rifaximin vs PBO: Headache: 6.1% vs 6.6%; upper respiratory tract infection: 5.6% vs 6.2%; abdominal pain: 4.6% vs 5.5% |
| Open label, then R, DB, PBO-C; TARGET 3 | IBS-D (Rome III criteria) with abdominal pain and bloating | Rifaximin 550 mg tid open-label for 2 weeks (n=1074)<br>If relapsed during 18-week observation phase: rifaximin 550 mg tid (n=328) vs PBO (n=308) | Percentage of responders[c] after first repeat treatment: rifaximin vs PBO: 38.1% vs 31.5%; *P*=.03 | Percentage of responders who did not have recurrence through end of 6-week repeat treatment observation phase and continued to respond without recurrence through end of second repeat treatment phase: rifaximin vs PBO: 13.2% vs 7.1%; *P* =.007 | AEs comparable between groups<br>Rifaximin vs PBO: Overall: 42.7% vs 45.5%; nausea: 3.7% vs 2.3%; upper respiratory tract infection: 3.7% vs 2.6%; urinary tract infection: 3.4% vs 4.9% |

**Abbreviations:** AE, adverse event; bid, twice daily; DB, double-blind; IBS, irritable bowel syndrome; PBO, placebo; PBO-C, placebo-controlled; R, randomized; TARGET, Targeted non-systemic Antibiotic Rifaximin Gut selective Evaluation Treatment; tid, 3 times daily.

[a]Patients included in modified intention-to-treat analysis.

[b]Defined as relief of symptoms for ≥2 of first 4 weeks of treatment by self-report.

[c]Defined as a decrease in abdominal pain ≥30% from baseline AND a decrease in frequency of loose stools ≥50% from baseline for ≥2 weeks during a 4-week posttreatment period.

lowed for an additional 10 weeks.[20] Significantly more patients in the rifaximin group than in the placebo group had adequate relief of global IBS symptoms during the first 4 weeks after treatment (**TABLE**).[20,35] The percentage of patients with adequate relief decreased over time in both groups, but remained higher for patients treated with rifaximin compared with patients receiving placebo during all 3 months in both studies. The incidence of adverse events was similar in the rifaximin and placebo groups.

Most recently, the randomized, placebo-controlled TARGET 3 study indicated that repeat treatment with rifaximin 550 mg 3 times daily for up to three 2-week cycles in patients with diarrhea-predominant IBS (IBS-D) was significantly more efficacious than placebo (38.1% vs 31.5%, *P*=.03) in improving IBS symptoms. Treatment was well tolerated.[35]

Although not indicated for IBS-C (constipation predominant), rifaximin (400 mg 3 times daily for 7-10 days) has been evaluated in patients with IBS-C in 2 small, double-blind trials.[36] In one trial, rifaximin plus neomycin significantly improved severity of constipation and symptoms of bloating and straining for up to 4 weeks compared with neomycin plus placebo.[36] In the other trial, which utilized a crossover design, rifaximin significantly decreased bloating, abdominal pain, abdominal distension, and flatulence compared with placebo.[37]

Overall, these data suggest that rifaximin, with its favorable safety profile and demonstrated efficacy, is a therapeutic option for patients with IBS-D.

### *Other prescription medications*

Alosetron, a selective 5-$HT_3$ antagonist, and eluxadoline, a mixed opioid receptor agonist/antagonist, are also approved for IBS-D but have no effect on the gut microbiome.

### *Fecal microbiota transplantation*

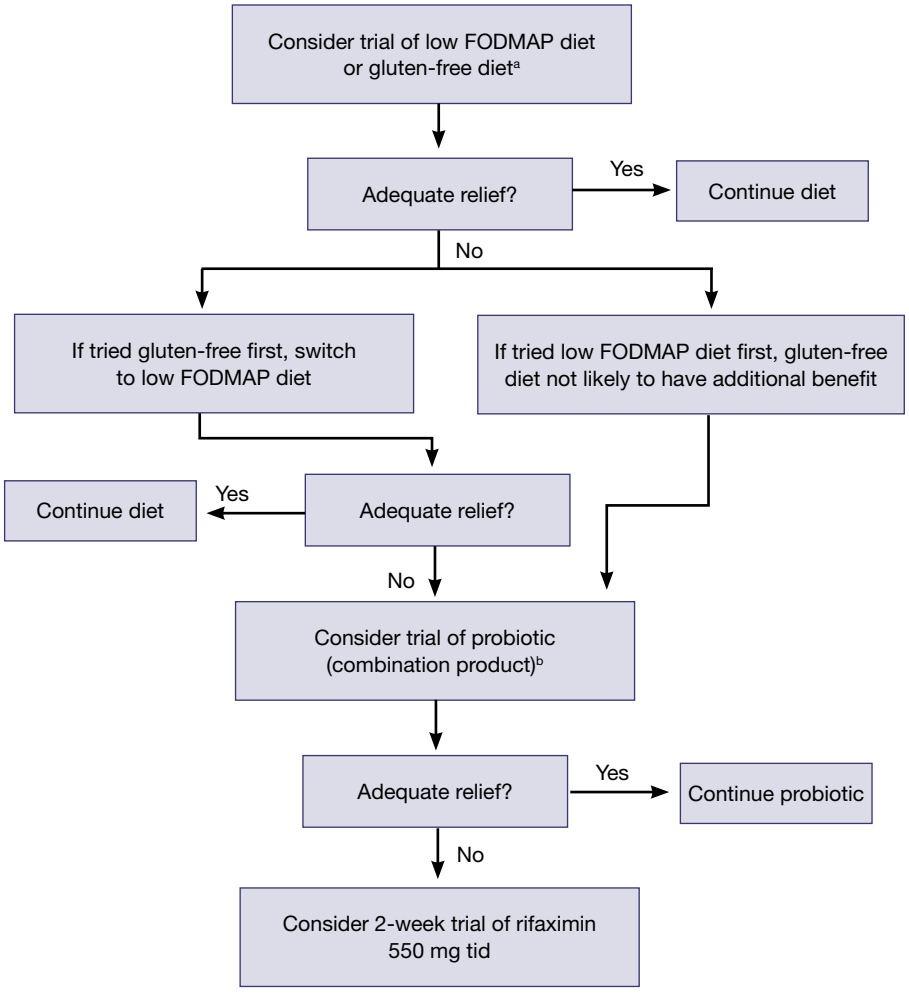
Fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT) involves oral administration of encapsulated fecal material containing distal gut microbiota from a healthy person who serves as a donor.[14] The goal is to treat disease by restoring microbiota typically found in a healthy person. FMT has been effective for *Clostridium difficile* infection, generating speculation that the process may benefit other conditions associated with dysbiosis, including IBS.[14]

Data about the efficacy of FMT for IBS are scanty and far from conclusive at this time, consisting primarily of several case series reporting relief of symptoms in patients with IBS who do not respond to conventional therapy.[21,38,39] Among concerns regarding FMT is the potential for long-term risks that may manifest as the development of chronic disease based on alterations in the gut microbiota.[14] For example, transplantation of human fecal microbiota from obese subjects to rodents has been shown to transmit an obesity phenotype.[40] FMT from lean subjects to obese subjects with metabolic syndrome, on the other hand, has proven beneficial, including an increase in insulin sensitivity.[41] Well-designed, large, randomized, controlled studies are required before FMT can be considered a therapeutic option in IBS.

## IMPLICATIONS FOR CLINICAL PRACTICE

While our understanding of the role of the gut microbiota and dysbiosis in IBS continues to evolve, several treatment approaches that target the gut microbiota have already demonstrated efficacy in IBS. The current body of knowledge regarding these treatments suggests a logical sequence, or simple algorithm, to guide their use in clinical practice (**FIGURE**).

**FIGURE Suggested algorithm for gut microbiota-targeted therapy for IBS**




**Abbreviations:** FODMAP, fermentable oligosaccharides, disaccharides, monosaccharides, and polyols; IBS, irritable bowel syndrome.

[a]Consider ruling out celiac disease in patients with persistent symptoms of gas, bloating, and diarrhea, and those with a family history.

[b]Consider at least a 4-week trial at adequate doses before judging response to treatment.

Diet manipulation should be considered first, including ruling out celiac disease in patients with persistent symptoms of gas, bloating, and diarrhea, as well as patients with a family history.[3] A gluten-free diet trial is a reasonable intervention, especially in patients with IBS-D, mixed irritable bowel syndrome, or predominant symptoms of gas and bloating. Alternatively, or in a patient not responding to a gluten-free diet, a 4-week trial of a low FODMAP diet under the guidance of a dietitian may be helpful. Longer trials need careful monitoring due to the potential for nutritional deficiencies.[3] Initiation of a gluten-free diet in a patient already on a low FODMAP diet is unlikely to provide additional benefit.

Probiotics may be considered in patients in whom dietary modification provides insufficient relief. While evidence does not suggest superiority of 1 microorganism over another, products containing combinations of microorganisms appear to be slightly more effective than single species/strain products. Trial duration should be at least 4 weeks before assessing treatment response.[17]

Rifaximin may be considered for patients with IBS refractory to dietary manipulation and probiotics. The drug is indicated only for the treatment of IBS-D, however.

In conclusion, IBS is one of the most common disorders treated by primary care physicians. Our rapidly accumulating knowledge about the pathophysiologic role of disturbances in the gut microbiota in IBS has prompted manipulation of the microbiota as a new therapeutic target for the disorder. A proposed algorithm suggests a logical approach for utilization of diet, probiotics, and antibiotics in clinical practice to manipulate the gut microbiota in the management of patients with IBS. ●

**REFERENCES**


1. National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health. 6 Tips: IBS and complementary health practices. https://nccih.nih.gov/health/tips/IBS. Published 2015. Accessed January 27, 2017.
2. Canavan C, West J, Card T. The epidemiology of irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Epidemiol*. 2014;6:71-80.
3. Lacy BE. The science, evidence, and practice of dietary interventions in irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2015;13(11):1899-1906.
4. Ahmad OF, Akbar A. Dietary treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *Br Med Bull*. 2015;113(1):83-90.
5. Dossett ML, Davis RB, Lembo AJ, Yeh GY. Complementary and alternative medicine use by US adults with gastrointestinal conditions: Results from the 2012 National Health Interview Survey. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2014;109(11):1705-1711.
6. Jeffery IB, O'Toole PW. Diet-microbiota interactions and their implications for healthy living. *Nutrients*. 2013;5(1):234-252.
7. National Institutes of Health. NIH Human microbiome project. http://hmpdacc.org/overview/about.php. Published 2016. Accessed January 27, 2017.
8. Gordon JI, Ley RE, Wilson R, et al. Washington University. Extending our view of self: the Human Gut Microbiome Initiative (HGMI). https://www.genome.gov/pages/research/sequencing/seqproposals/hgmiseq.pdf. Published 2015. Accessed January 27, 2017.
9. Lee KN, Lee OY. Intestinal microbiota in pathophysiology and management of irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2014;20(27):8886-8897.
10. Chey WD, Kurlander J, Eswaran S. Irritable bowel syndrome: a clinical review. *JAMA*. 2015;313(9):949-958.
11. Moraes-Filho JP, Quigley EM. The intestinal microbiota and the role of probiotics in irritable bowel syndrome: a review. *Arq Gastroenterol*. 2015;52(4):331-338.
12. Noval Rivas M, Crother TR, Arditi M. The microbiome in asthma. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2016;28(6):764-771.
13. Vogtmann E, Goedert JJ. Epidemiologic studies of the human microbiome and cancer. *Br J Cancer*. 2016;114(3):237-242.
14. Kelly CR, Kahn S, Kashyap P, et al. Update on fecal microbiota transplantation 2015: indications, methodologies, mechanisms, and outlook. *Gastroenterology*. 2015;149(1):223-237.
15. Petra AI, Panagiotidou S, Hatziagelaki E, Stewart JM, Conti P, Theoharides TC. Gut-microbiota-brain axis and its effect on neuropsychiatric disorders with suspected immune dysregulation. *Clin Ther*. 2015;37(5):984-995.
16. Forbes JD, Van DG, Bernstein CN. The gut microbiota in immune-mediated inflammatory diseases. *Front Microbiol*. 2016;7:1081.
17. Simren M, Barbara G, Flint HJ, et al. Intestinal microbiota in functional bowel disorders: a Rome foundation report. *Gut*. 2013;62(1):159-176.
18. Dupont HL. Review article: evidence for the role of gut microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome and its potential influence on therapeutic targets. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther*. 2014;39(10):1033-1042.
19. Ford AC, Quigley EM, Lacy BE, et al. Efficacy of prebiotics, probiotics, and synbiotics in irritable bowel syndrome and chronic idiopathic constipation: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2014;109(10):1547-1561.
20. Pimentel M, Lembo A, Chey WD, et al. Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *N Engl J Med*. 2011;364(1):22-32.
21. Pinn DM, Aroniadis OC, Brandt LJ. Is fecal microbiota transplantation the answer for irritable bowel syndrome? A single-center experience. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2014;109(11):1831-1832.
22. Distrutti E, Monaldi L, Ricci P, Fiorucci S. Gut microbiota role in irritable bowel syndrome: New therapeutic strategies. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2016;22(7):2219-2241.
23. Bennet SM, Ohman L, Simren M, Lee KN, Lee OY. Gut microbiota as potential orchestrators of irritable bowel syndrome. Intestinal microbiota in pathophysiology and management of irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut Liver*. 2015;9(3):318-331.
24. David LA, Maurice CF, Carmody RN, et al. Diet rapidly and reproducibly alters the human gut microbiome. *Nature*. 2014;505(7484):559-563.
25. Jumpertz R, Le DS, Turnbaugh PJ, et al. Energy-balance studies reveal associations between gut microbes, caloric load, and nutrient absorption in humans. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2011;94(1):58-65.
26. Nanayakkara WS, Skidmore PM, O'Brien L, Wilkinson TJ, Gearry RB. Efficacy of the low FODMAP diet for treating irritable bowel syndrome: the evidence to date. *Clin Exp Gastroenterol*. 2016;9:131-142.
27. Staudacher HM, Lomer MC, Anderson JL, et al. Fermentable carbohydrate restriction reduces luminal bifidobacteria and gastrointestinal symptoms in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *J Nutr*. 2012;142(8):1510-1518.
28. Halmos EP, Power VA, Shepherd SJ, Gibson PR, Muir JG. A diet low in FODMAPs reduces symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology*. 2014;146(1):67-75.
29. Biesiekierski JR, Newnham ED, Irving PM, et al. Gluten causes gastrointestinal symptoms in subjects without celiac disease: a double-blind randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2011;106(3):508-514.
30. Biesiekierski JR, Peters SL, Newnham ED, Rosella O, Muir JG, Gibson PR. No effects of gluten in patients with self-reported non-celiac gluten sensitivity after dietary reduction of fermentable, poorly absorbed, short-chain carbohydrates. *Gastroenterology*. 2013;145(2):320-328.
31. Moayyedi P, Quigley EM, Lacy BE, et al. The effect of fiber supplementation on irritable bowel syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2014;109(9):1367-1374.
32. Mayer EA, Savidge T, Shulman RJ. Brain-gut microbiome interactions and functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology*. 2014;146(6):1500-1512.
33. Didari T, Mozaffari S, Nikfar S, Abdollahi M. Effectiveness of probiotics in irritable bowel syndrome: Updated systematic review with meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2015;21(10):3072-3084.
34. Foxx-Orenstein AE. New and emerging therapies for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome: an update for gastroenterologists. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol*. 2016;9(3):354-375.
35. Lembo A, Pimentel M, Rao SS, et al. Repeat treatment with rifaximin is safe and effective in patients with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology*. 2016;151(6):113-1121.
36. Pimentel M, Chang C, Chua KS, et al. Antibiotic treatment of constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci*. 2014;59(6):1278-1285.
37. Di Stefano M, Tana P, Mengoli C, Miceli E, Pagani E, Corazza GR. Colonic hypersensitivity is a major determinant of the efficacy of bloating treatment in constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Intern Emerg Med*. 2011;6(5):403-411.
38. Borody TJ, Paramsothy S, Agrawal G. Fecal microbiota transplantation: indications, methods, evidence, and future directions. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep*. 2013;15(8):337.
39. Holvoet T, Joossens M, Wang J, et al. Assessment of faecal microbial transfer in irritable bowel syndrome with severe bloating. *Gut*. 2016;doi:10.1136/gutjnl-2016-312513.
40. Ridaura VK, Faith JJ, Rey FE, et al. Gut microbiota from twins discordant for obesity modulate metabolism in mice. *Science*. 2013;341(6150):1241214.
41. Vrieze A, Van NE, Holleman F, et al. Transfer of intestinal microbiota from lean donors increases insulin sensitivity in individuals with metabolic syndrome. *Gastroenterology*. 2012;143(4):913-916.

# Medication Adherence in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Real-World Strategies for Addressing a Common Problem

Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP; and William H. Polonsky, PhD, CDE

## EXTENT OF THE PROBLEM

In 2003, the World Health Organization observed that "increasing the effectiveness of adherence interventions may have a far greater impact on the health of the population than any improvement in specific medical treatments."[1] Evidence since then indicates that medication adherence remains suboptimal for patients with many diseases, including chronic diseases such as type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), for which adherence is reported to range from 30% to 93%.[2-6] A meta-analysis that included 40 studies from 2005 to 2015 showed that 67.9% of patients with T2DM were adherent to their oral antihyperglycemic therapy.[7] A 2015 study reported that the 1-year adherence rate with glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (GLP-1RA) therapy was 34%.[8] Adherence with insulin in patients with T2DM has been reported to range from 51% to 59% at 3 months following initiation, 39% to 48% at 6 months, and 27% to 35% at 12 months.[6]

The importance of treatment adherence is well established, as poor adherence contributes to disease progression and increased morbidity and mortality. Analysis of 11,272 veterans with T2DM with a mean follow-up of 5 years showed that for each 10% increase in the medication possession ratio, the mean glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c) decreased by 0.24%.[9] Poor adherence also leads to increased health care resource utilization and costs, including more frequent hospitalizations.[9-12] Conversely, while improved adherence increases medication costs, it can decrease overall health care resource utilization and costs.[11,13,14] Improved medication adherence also contributes to improvement in diabetes-related quality of life.[15]

The potent negative impact of poor medication adherence on diabetes outcomes makes it clear that greater urgency must be given to addressing this issue.[16-18] It is not enough to accurately diagnose a disease and prescribe the appropriate treatment; the treatment must be taken. As US Surgeon General C. Everett Koop, MD, once said, "Drugs don't work in people who don't take them." Supporting patients to take their medications is not a "once-and-done" undertaking. It is of utmost importance that treatment adherence be assessed at each patient visit and that appropriate action be taken.

## FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO POOR MEDICATION ADHERENCE

Numerous factors are recognized as contributing to poor medication adherence (**TABLE**).[19-59] Many of these factors may be interrelated, making it important to identify the root causes. For example, patients may report that they simply forgot to take their medication because of the "busyness" of everyday life when, in fact, they have little intention of taking their medication. This might be because they do not see the need for the medication, are concerned about adverse events, cannot afford it, or have some other reason that overrides the benefit(s) they think would occur by taking their medication.[21] Even the mere act of taking medication on a daily basis can contribute to poor adherence by reminding patients they are sick. Because the factor(s) that contribute to poor adherence vary by individual and over time, it is important to assess patient adherence at each visit.[60]

**Stephen A. Brunton, MD, FAAFP,** Adjunct Clinical Professor, Department of Clinical Pharmacy Practice, Roseman University, Salt Lake City, UT; Executive Vice President for Education, Primary Care Education Consortium, Los Angeles, CA

**William H. Polonsky, PhD, CDE,** President, Behavioral Diabetes Institute; Associate Clinical Professor, University of California, San Diego, CA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Brunton discloses that he is on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for AstraZeneca; Boehringer Ingelheim GmbH; Eli Lilly and Company; Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; and Novo Nordisk Inc. He is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Allergan; Becton, Dickinson and Company; Cempra, Inc.; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; and Mylan N.V.

Dr. Polonsky discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Abbott Diabetes Care Inc.; Astra Zeneca; Dexcom, Inc.; Eli Lilly and Company; F. Hoffmann-La Roche Ltd; Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.; Livongo; Mannkind Corporation; Novo Nordisk Inc.; and Sanofi US.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Intarcia Therapeutics, Inc.

Another key factor that affects medication adherence is the patient's level of trust in the provider. A cross-sectional analysis of the Diabetes Study of Northern California (N=9377) showed that patients who gave providers lower ratings for eliciting confidence and trust were more likely to have poor adherence.[53] Factors that may have contributed to this finding were providers not involving patients in decisions and not understanding problems patients were having with treatment. Provider behaviors that promote patient trust include active listening, openness, providing emotional support, providing clear and thorough information, and allowing adequate time for patients to ask questions.[61-64]

## THE NEED FOR A PARADIGM SHIFT

Despite efforts to increase patient and provider awareness about adherence and the implementation of numerous strategies, treatment adherence remains suboptimal for many diseases. Among interventions that have been successful, few have demonstrated clinically meaningful, long-lasting outcomes.[65] This situation highlights the need for a paradigm shift in addressing the problem of adherence.

In considering a new paradigm, some observations may be helpful. The first is that most medication adherence interventions have focused on reducing behavioral burden (eg, strategies to address forgetfulness).[65-71] Yet experience suggests that multiple factors impact adherence and that emotional, attitudinal, and behavioral factors are important in determining adherence.[72]

The second consideration is that barriers to treatment adherence often differ from one patient to another and, in fact, often change over time in the same patient. The patient may not take a medication for T2DM today because he experienced a hypoglycemic episode yesterday. Tomorrow, he may forget to take his medication because the night before he did not place his medication beside his coffee mug. At the same time, he is not convinced he needs to take medication for a disease (diabetes) that is not causing symptoms.

The inter- and intra-individual factors contributing to poor adherence make it clear that the treatment plan needs to be individualized. In doing so, greater attention needs to be given to the patient's perspective, with the provider identifying patient concerns and barriers to therapy and collaborating with the patient to find solutions that the patient is willing and able to implement. It is important that this collaborative process is undertaken at each visit, with ongoing support available between visits, if necessary.

Unfortunately, patients and providers are often not "on the same page." Providers often have difficulty identifying their patients' concerns and the information and skills their patients need to feel more confident in managing their diabetes.[73] In addition, patients and providers often have different goals regarding long-term medication usage.[47]

**TABLE Patient factors contributing to poor medication adherence[19-59]**

| |
|---|
| • Younger age |
| • Lower education level |
| • Lower income |
| • Depression |
| • Forgetfulness |
| • Limited health literacy |
| • Poor understanding of disease |
| • Beliefs or misperceptions about disease |
| • Doubt regarding treatment efficacy |
| • Fear of hypoglycemia |
| • Treatment complexity and convenience |
| • High cost and unaffordability |
| • Poor trust of provider |
| • Poor communication with provider |

Lastly, chronic diseases have become more common and may represent a greater challenge to treatment adherence and overall patient self-management than acute diseases. Yet, chronic diseases are generally approached using an acute-care model. While the acute treatment of a disease often requires days or a few weeks of treatment, a chronic disease requires lifelong treatment. Adhering to medications that require administration once daily or more frequently in perpetuity can be challenging. Therefore, new methods of medication administration are needed to suit the chronicity of the disease.

## ADHERENCE: THE PATIENT'S PERSPECTIVE

The health outcomes of a patient with a chronic disease such as T2DM are largely determined by the patient's self-management of the disease.[74] Collaborative decision-making, which is often accomplished through the use of motivational interviewing strategies, engages patients in the process of making medical decisions through improving knowledge and helping them clarify their values regarding the risks and benefits of each of the available treatment options.[75] Beyond discussing factual information, the process incorporates patient preferences into health decisions. Further information about motivational interviewing can be found at: http://www.motivationalinterviewing.org/.

The key beliefs that influence patients' values and preferences regarding medications and ultimately adherence can be grouped under 2 orthogonal categories, as has been developed in the Necessity-Concerns Framework: perception of personal need for treatment (necessity beliefs) and concern about the various potential adverse consequences

of each medication (concerns).[76] A survey of 405 patients with T2DM showed that those with a high level of diabetes-related knowledge and strong belief in the necessity of their diabetes medications demonstrated significantly greater adherence.[77] Conversely, those with a high level of concern about adverse consequences of diabetes medications were less adherent. It has also been suggested that concerns about adverse consequences of glucose-lowering medications may more strongly influence adherence than necessity beliefs.[52] In total, how the patient balances his own necessity beliefs vs medication concerns is a greater determinant of medication adherence than sociodemographic variables (eg, education, gender, age) and clinical variables (type of illness, number of medications).[78-80]

## STRATEGIES TO IMPROVE PATIENT ADHERENCE IN PRIMARY CARE

To facilitate the paradigm shift needed to address the problem of poor adherence, what can be done now in the primary care setting? What systems and advances are on the horizon that might help?

To improve medication adherence, the key is to consider strategies that enhance communication between provider and patient and promote greater understanding of the patient's perspective. This can be done through application of the Necessity-Concerns Framework as part of a collaborative decision-making process.

### Patient responsibility

The first strategy is to recognize that adherence ultimately rests with the patient. As providers, however, we need to collaborate with the patient to identify and address critical barriers to adherence. We cannot solve the problem *for* the patient, but rather we can work *with* the patient to find 1 or more solutions that the patient finds acceptable and is willing and able to implement and continue long-term. The following scenarios are real-world strategies to identify and resolve common patient barriers to medication adherence.

### Communication

Following are approaches the provider may use during a patient visit to determine patient understanding and actual adherence.

To identify patient understanding of treatment and its importance:

**Provider:**
- *"Please tell me what you know about diabetes and the impact it can have on your health."*
- *"What do you think are the benefits of taking your medications?"*
- *"What do you think are the potential negatives about your medications?"*

To ascertain actual adherence, the provider should normalize the likelihood of poor adherence; in other words, give the patient "permission" to not be 100% adherent.

**Provider:**
- *"Most patients tell me they find it difficult to take their medications every day as we've agreed. How often would you guess that you skip or forget to take your medications?"*
- *"Think back to the last time that you didn't take your medications as we've agreed. What was the main reason?"*

### Emotional distress

Medication adherence can be affected by emotional distress caused by everyday events such as work or family demands. Emotional distress frequently stems from beliefs and demands related to diabetes.[81] Patients often believe that diabetes is ultimately fatal (and therefore, ongoing treatment is pointless) or have heard that medications are commonly associated with negative outcomes such as hypoglycemia, weight gain, and perhaps even cancer.[82,83]

**Provider:** *"I imagine you have heard many things about diabetes and medications used to treat it. What are some things you have heard that worry you the most?"*

**Patient:** Provides a list

**Provider:** *"Those are interesting, so let's identify the ones that are most important and work together to come up with a plan to address them. I'd also like to share a secret about diabetes with you. What really matters is that we work together to develop a treatment plan that you feel comfortable about following. If we do that together, the odds are good that you can live a long, healthy life."*

### Cost/financial constraints

Cost and affordability are important determinants of adherence to medications, particularly for patients with low income, in poor health, and on multiple medications.[84-86]

**Provider:** *"With your insurance coverage, are you able to afford the out-of-pocket cost of your medications?"*

**If No:** *"Would it be okay if we explore how you might receive your medications at a reduced cost?"*

**If Yes:** *"Are you willing to spend the money for the out-of-pocket cost of your medications?"* If No: *"What would need to happen for you to spend the money for your medications?"*

The effect of cost on patient medication adherence is influenced by patient trust in the provider.[57] Patients have been shown to be more likely to forgo medications because of

higher out-of-pocket cost when provider trust level is low. Furthermore, patients with high medical cost burden have significantly greater likelihood of lacking adequate trust in their provider to put the patient's needs above all else.[87]

### Advances in medications

A variety of approaches are available to address the burdensome and often complex nature of chronic medication use. Among the most commonly used is a fixed-dose combination of 2 glucose-lowering medications, 1 of which is usually metformin. Premixed insulins consisting of a basal and a bolus insulin have been available for decades, while fixed-ratio combinations of basal insulin and a glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist (GLP-1RA) were approved in 2016. Adherence with a fixed-dose combination product is somewhat less than with monotherapy but greater than with dual therapy with the individual medications.[88-91]

Medications with a long duration of action and flexible dosing times have also been developed. These include the GLP-1RAs albiglutide, dulaglutide, exenatide once-weekly, and liraglutide, as well as the long-acting basal insulin analogs degludec and glargine U-300.[92-94] Evidence indicates, however, that patient adherence at 1 year with long-acting medications for T2DM is similar to that with oral medications[7,49,95-97] This is in contrast to adherence with the use of long-acting reversible contraceptives, including implants, which are generally associated with a lower rate of unintended pregnancy compared with other contraceptives.[98-100] These findings suggest that patient adherence to medications for T2DM is multifactorial and complex.

### Advances in delivery systems

#### Pen devices

Among the advances in delivery systems has been the evolution from vials and syringes to sophisticated pen devices for injecting insulin and GLP-1RAs. In addition to being more easily carried, pre-filled cartridges make it easy to load medication into the device. Accurate dosing is facilitated via various dose selectors with easy-to-read display and audible features. Ultrafine needles minimize injection pain. These features have been shown in numerous studies to improve patient satisfaction and adherence compared with vials and syringes.[34-37,101]

#### Insulin pumps

Another advance in the administration of insulin in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM) and, more recently, T2DM is the use of insulin pump therapy. More than a decade ago, DeVries et al showed that continuous, subcutaneous insulin infusion improves glycemic control and some aspects of health-related quality of life in patients with T1DM and a history of long-term, poor glycemic control.[102] Recently, positive changes in overall well-being, perceived control over diabetes, hypoglycemic safety, and diabetes distress have been reported by patients with T2DM using a continuous, subcutaneous insulin infusion system.[103] These results are likely related to fewer missed doses with insulin pump therapy.

#### Osmotic mini-pump

Under FDA review is an implantable osmotic mini-pump that delivers a continuous subcutaneous release of the GLP-1RA exenatide at a predetermined rate for up to 6 months, obviating the need for twice-daily or once-weekly injection. The match stick–sized osmotic mini-pump is aseptically placed in the abdominal region during a brief office procedure (**FIGURE**).[104] The ITCA 650 mini-pump ensures a consistent therapeutic level for up to 6 months.[105] Because ITCA 650 is placed subcutaneously, 100% adherence seems likely.

**FIGURE The ITCA 650 osmotic mini-pump**

PHOTO COURTESY OF: INTARCIA THERAPEUTICS

The efficacy and safety of ITCA 650 have been demonstrated in phase 3 trials. In the FREEDOM-1 trial, patients inadequately controlled with diet and exercise or oral medications (N=460) were randomized to ITCA 650 at 40 µg/d or 60 µg/d (20 µg/d for the first 13 weeks for both) or placebo for 39 weeks.[106] From a mean baseline of 8.5%, placebo-subtracted HbA1c reductions were 1.1% and 1.2% for the 40 µg/d and 60 µg/d doses, respectively. The FREEDOM-2 trial randomized 535 patients on metformin ≥1500 mg/d with HbA1C ≥7.5% to ≤10.5% to ITCA 650 at 60 µg/d or sitagliptin 100 mg/d for 52 weeks.[107] Mean HbA1c reductions from baseline were -1.5% vs -0.8%, respectively. Body weight decreased 4.0 kg vs 1.3 kg, respectively. Minor hypoglycemia occurred in 4.2% of patients on ITCA 650 and 1.9% of those on sitagliptin. Gastrointestinal adverse events were more common with ITCA 650 and were mostly transient.

## CALL TO ACTION

Poor medication adherence continues to have a major negative impact on health outcomes in patients with diabetes mellitus. It is time that this reality is recognized and that a paradigm shift occurs in clinical practice, with steps taken in primary care to minimize the chance for poor medication

adherence when developing the treatment plan. Among the numerous strategies that have been explored and recommended are improved provider-patient communication that integrates the Necessity-Concerns Framework and use of medications and delivery systems designed to improve adherence. The adoption of new delivery systems and other technology-based solutions as they become available may further improve medication adherence. ●

**REFERENCES**


1. World Health Organization. Adherence to long-term therapies. Evidence for action. http://www.who.int/chp/knowledge/publications/adherence_introduction.pdf. Published 2003. Accessed February 8, 2017.
2. Cramer JA, Benedict A, Muszbek N, et al. The significance of compliance and persistence in the treatment of diabetes, hypertension and dyslipidaemia: a review. *Int J Clin Pract.* 2008;62(1):76-87.
3. Farr AM, Sheehan JJ, Curkendall SM, et al. Retrospective analysis of long-term adherence to and persistence with DPP-4 inhibitors in US adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Adv Ther.* 2014;31(12):1287-1305.
4. Krass I, Schieback P, Dhippayom T. Adherence to diabetes medication: a systematic review. *Diabet Med.* 2015;32(6):725-737.
5. Vietri JT, Wlodarczyk CS, Lorenzo R, et al. Missed doses of oral antihyperglycemic medications in US adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus: prevalence and self-reported reasons. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2016;32(9):1519-1527.
6. Bonafede MM, Kalsekar A, Pawaskar M, et al. A retrospective database analysis of insulin use patterns in insulin-naïve patients with type 2 diabetes initiating basal insulin or mixtures. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2010;4:147-156.
7. Iglay K, Cartier SE, Rosen VM, et al. Meta-analysis of studies examining medication adherence, persistence, and discontinuation of oral antihyperglycemic agents in type 2 diabetes. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2015;31(7):1283-1296.
8. Buysman EK, Liu F, Hammer M, Langer J. Impact of medication adherence and persistence on clinical and economic outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes treated with liraglutide: a retrospective cohort study. *Adv Ther.* 2015;32(4):341-355.
9. Egede LE, Gebregziabher M, Echols C, et al. Longitudinal effects of medication nonadherence on glycemic control. *Ann Pharmacother.* 2014;48(5):562-570.
10. Currie CJ, Peyrot M, Morgan CL, et al. The impact of treatment noncompliance on mortality in people with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2012;35(6):1279-1284.
11. Egede LE, Gebregziabher M, Dismuke CE, et al. Medication nonadherence in diabetes: longitudinal effects on costs and potential cost savings from improvement. *Diabetes Care.* 2012;35(12):2533-2539.
12. DiBonaventura M, Wintfeld N, Huang J, et al. The association between nonadherence and glycated hemoglobin among type 2 diabetes patients using basal insulin analogs. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2014;8:873-882.
13. Jha AK, Aubert RE, Yao J, et al. Greater adherence to diabetes drugs is linked to less hospital use and could save nearly $5 billion annually. *Health Aff (Millwood).* 2012;31(8):1836-1846.
14. Cheng SH, Chen CC, Tseng CH. Does medication adherence lead to lower healthcare expenses for patients with diabetes? *Am J Manag Care.* 2013;19(8):662-670.
15. Alfian SD, Sukandar H, Lestari K, et al. Medication adherence contributes to an improved quality of life in type 2 diabetes mellitus patients: A cross-sectional study. *Diabetes Ther.* 2016;7(4):755-764.
16. Feldman BS, Cohen-Stavi CJ, Leibowitz M, et al. Defining the role of medication adherence in poor glycemic control among a general adult population with diabetes. *PLoS One.* 2014;9(9):e108145.
17. McAdam-Marx C, Bellows BK, Unni S, et al. Impact of adherence and weight loss on glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes: cohort analyses of integrated medical record, pharmacy claims, and patient-reported data. *J Manag Care Spec Pharm.* 2014;20(7):691-700.
18. Wild H. The economic rationale for adherence in the treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Am J Manag Care.* 2012;18(3 Suppl):S43-S48.
19. Curkendall SM, Thomas N, Bell KF, et al. Predictors of medication adherence in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2013;29(10):1275-1286.
20. Weidenbacher HJ, Beadles CA, Maciejewski ML, et al. Extent and reasons for nonadherence to antihypertensive, cholesterol, and diabetes medications: the association with depressive symptom burden in a sample of American veterans. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2015;9:327-336.
21. Gadkari AS, McHorney CA. Unintentional non-adherence to chronic prescription medications: how unintentional is it really? *BMC Health Serv Res.* 2012;12:98.
22. Polonsky WH, Skinner TC. Perceived treatment efficacy: An overlooked opportunity in diabetes care. *Clin Diabetes.* 2010;28(2):89-92.
23. McAdam-Marx C, Bellows BK, Unni S, et al. Determinants of glycaemic control in a practice setting: the role of weight loss and treatment adherence (The DELTA Study). *Int J Clin Pract.* 2014;68(11):1309-1317.
24. Gadkari AS, McHorney CA. Medication nonfulfillment rates and reasons: narrative systematic review. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2010;26(3):683-705.
25. Walz L, Pettersson B, Rosenqvist U, et al. Impact of symptomatic hypoglycemia on medication adherence, patient satisfaction with treatment, and glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2014;8:593-601.
26. Lopez JM, Annunziata K, Bailey RA, et al. Impact of hypoglycemia on patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and their quality of life, work productivity, and medication adherence. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2014;8:683-692.
27. Bron M, Marynchenko M, Yang H, et al. Hypoglycemia, treatment discontinuation, and costs in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus on oral antidiabetic drugs. *Postgrad Med.* 2012;124(1):124-132.
28. Hajós TR, Polonsky WH, Pouwer F, et al. Toward defining a cutoff score for elevated fear of hypoglycemia on the hypoglycemia fear survey worry subscale in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2014;37(1):102-108.
29. Gonder-Frederick LA, Vajda KA, Schmidt KM, et al. Examining the behaviour subscale of the hypoglycaemia fear survey: an international study. *Diabet Med.* 2013;30(5):603-609.
30. Garcia-Pérez LE, Alvarez M, Dilla T, et al. Adherence to therapies in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Ther.* 2013;4(2):175-194.
31. Claxton AJ, Cramer J, Pierce C. A systematic review of the associations between dose regimens and medication compliance. *Clin Ther.* 2001;23(8):1296-1310.
32. Coleman CI, Limone B, Sobieraj DM, et al. Dosing frequency and medication adherence in chronic disease. *J Manag Care Pharm.* 2012;18(7):527-539.
33. Saini SD, Schoenfeld P, Kaulback K, et al. Effect of medication dosing frequency on adherence in chronic diseases. *Am J Manag Care.* 2009;15(6):e22-e33.
34. Davis SN, Wei W, Garg S. Clinical impact of initiating insulin glargine therapy with disposable pen versus vial in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in a managed care setting. *Endocr Pract.* 2011;17(6):845-852.
35. Buysman E, Conner C, Aagren M, et al. Adherence and persistence to a regimen of basal insulin in a pre-filled pen compared to vial/syringe in insulin-naïve patients with type 2 diabetes. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2011;27(9):1709-1717.
36. Grabner M, Chu J, Raparla S, et al. Clinical and economic outcomes among patients with diabetes mellitus initiating insulin glargine pen versus vial. *Postgrad Med.* 2013;125(3):204-213.
37. Xie L, Zhou S, Pinsky BW, et al. Impact of initiating insulin glargine disposable pen versus vial/syringe on real-world glycemic outcomes and persistence among patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in a large managed care plan: a claims database analysis. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2014;16(9):567-575.
38. Kirkman MS, Rowan-Martin MT, Levin R, et al. Determinants of adherence to diabetes medications: findings from a large pharmacy claims database. *Diabetes Care.* 2015;38(4):604-609.
39. Eaddy MT, Cook CL, O'Day K, et al. How patient cost-sharing trends affect adherence and outcomes: a literature review. *P T.* 2012;37(1):45-55.
40. Piette JD, Heisler M, Wagner TH. Problems paying out-of-pocket medication costs among older adults with diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2004;27(2):384-391.
41. Yala SM, Duru OK, Ettner SL, et al. Patterns of prescription drug expenditures and medication adherence among medicare part D beneficiaries with and without the low-income supplement. *BMC Health Serv Res.* 2014;14:665.
42. Aziz H, Hatah E, Makmor BM, et al. How payment scheme affects patients' adherence to medications? A systematic review. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2016;10:837-850.
43. Karter AJ, Subramanian U, Saha C, et al. Barriers to insulin initiation: the translating research into action for diabetes insulin starts project. *Diabetes Care.* 2010;33(4):733-735.
44. Aikens JE, Piette JD. Diabetic patients' medication underuse, illness outcomes, and beliefs about antihyperglycemic and antihypertensive treatments. *Diabetes Care.* 2009;32(1):19-24.
45. Foot H, La CA, Gujral G, et al. The necessity-concerns framework predicts adherence to medication in multiple illness conditions: A meta-analysis. *Patient Educ Couns.* 2016;99(5):706-717.
46. Mann DM, Ponieman D, Leventhal H, et al. Predictors of adherence to diabetes medications: the role of disease and medication beliefs. *J Behav Med.* 2009;32(3):278-284.
47. Grant B, Colello SH. Culture change through patient engagement. *Nurs Manage.* 2010;41(10):44-46.
48. Polonsky WH, Fisher L, Guzman S, et al. Psychological insulin resistance in patients with type 2 diabetes: the scope of the problem. *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28(10):2543-2545.
49. Polonsky WH, Fisher L, Hessler D, et al. Patient perspectives on once-weekly medications for diabetes. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2011;13(2):144-149.
50. Waheedi M, Awad A, Hatoum HT, et al. The relationship between patients' knowledge of diabetes therapeutic goals and self-management behaviour, including adherence. *Int J Clin Pharm.* 2017;39(1)45-51.
51. Patel N, Stone MA, McDonough C, et al. Concerns and perceptions about necessity in relation to insulin therapy in an ethnically diverse UK population with Type 2 diabetes: a qualitative study focusing mainly on people of South Asian origin. *Diabet Med.* 2015;32(5):635-644.
52. de Vries ST, Keers JC, Visser R, et al. Medication beliefs, treatment complexity, and non-adherence to different drug classes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Psychosom Res.* 2014;76(2):134-138.
53. Ratanawongsa N, Karter AJ, Parker MM, et al. Communication and medication refill adherence: the diabetes study of Northern California. *JAMA Intern Med.* 2013;173(3):210-218.

54. Bauer AM, Parker MM, Schillinger D, et al. Associations between antidepressant adherence and shared decision-making, patient-provider trust, and communication among adults with diabetes: diabetes study of Northern California (DISTANCE). *J Gen Intern Med.* 2014;29(8):1139-1147.
55. Kerse N, Buetow S, Mainous AG, III, et al. Physician-patient relationship and medication compliance: a primary care investigation. *Ann Fam Med.* 2004;2(5):455-461.
56. Polonsky WH, Fisher L, Hessler D, et al. What is so tough about self-monitoring of blood glucose? Perceived obstacles among patients with Type 2 diabetes. *Diabet Med.* 2014;31(1):40-46.
57. Piette JD, Heisler M, Krein S, et al. The role of patient-physician trust in moderating medication nonadherence due to cost pressures. *Arch Intern Med.* 2005;165(15):1749-1755.
58. Linetzky B, Jiang D, Funnell MM, et al. Exploring the role of the patient-physician relationship on insulin adherence and clinical outcomes in type 2 diabetes: Insights from the MOSAIc study. *J Diabetes.* 2016;doi: 10.1111/1753-0407.12443.
59. Polinski JM, Kesselheim AS, Frolkis JP, et al. A matter of trust: patient barriers to primary medication adherence. *Health Educ Res.* 2014;29(5):755-763.
60. Leporini C, Piro R, Ursini F, et al. Monitoring safety and use of old and new treatment options for type 2 diabetic patients: a two-year (2013-2016) analysis. *Expert Opin Drug Saf.* 2016;15(sup2):17-34.
61. Hall MA, Dugan E, Zheng B, et al. Trust in physicians and medical institutions: what is it, can it be measured, and does it matter? *Milbank Q.* 2001;79(4):613-39, v.
62. Keating NL, Gandhi TK, Orav EJ, et al. Patient characteristics and experiences associated with trust in specialist physicians. *Arch Intern Med.* 2004;164(9):1015-1020.
63. Fiscella K, Meldrum S, Franks P, et al. Patient trust: is it related to patient-centered behavior of primary care physicians? *Med Care.* 2004;42(11):1049-1055.
64. Duberstein P, Meldrum S, Fiscella K, et al. Influences on patients' ratings of physicians: Physicians demographics and personality. *Patient Educ Couns.* 2007;65(2):270-274.
65. Nieuwlaat R, Wilczynski N, Navarro T, et al. Interventions for enhancing medication adherence. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2014;11:CD000011.
66. Demonceau J, Ruppar T, Kristanto P, et al. Identification and assessment of adherence-enhancing interventions in studies assessing medication adherence through electronically compiled drug dosing histories: a systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *Drugs.* 2013;73(6):545-562.
67. Sapkota S, Brien JA, Greenfield JR, et al. A systematic review of interventions addressing adherence to anti-diabetic medications in patients with type 2 diabetes—components of interventions. *PLoS One.* 2015;10(6):e0128581.
68. Vignon Zomahoun HT, de Bruin M, Guillaumie L, et al. Effectiveness and content analysis of interventions to enhance oral antidiabetic drug adherence in adults with type 2 diabetes: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Value Health.* 2015;18(4):530-540.
69. Williams JL, Walker RJ, Smalls BL, et al. Effective interventions to improve medication adherence in Type 2 diabetes: a systematic review. *Diabetes Manag (Lond).* 2014;4(1):29-48.
70. Zullig LL, Gellad WF, Moaddeb J, et al. Improving diabetes medication adherence: successful, scalable interventions. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2015;9:139-149.
71. Antoine SL, Pieper D, Mathes T, et al. Improving the adherence of type 2 diabetes mellitus patients with pharmacy care: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *BMC Endocr Disord.* 2014;14:53.
72. Steiner JF. Rethinking adherence. *Ann Intern Med.* 2012;157(8):580-585.
73. Hajos TR, Polonsky WH, Twisk JW, et al. Do physicians understand type 2 diabetes patients' perceptions of seriousness; the emotional impact and needs for care improvement? A cross-national survey. *Patient Educ Couns.* 2011;85(2):258-263.
74. Tuerk PW, Mueller M, Egede LE. Estimating physician effects on glycemic control in the treatment of diabetes: methods, effects sizes, and implications for treatment policy. *Diabetes Care.* 2008;31(5):869-873.
75. Politi MC, Street RL, Jr. The importance of communication in collaborative decision making: facilitating shared mind and the management of uncertainty. *J Eval Clin Pract.* 2011;17(4):579-584.
76. Horne R, Chapman SC, Parham R, et al. Understanding patients' adherence-related beliefs about medicines prescribed for long-term conditions: a meta-analytic review of the Necessity-Concerns Framework. *PLoS One.* 2013;8(12):e80633.
77. Sweileh WM, Zyoud SH, Abu Nab'a RJ, et al. Influence of patients' disease knowledge and beliefs about medicines on medication adherence: findings from a cross-sectional survey among patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in Palestine. *BMC Public Health.* 2014;14:94.
78. Horne R, Weinman J. Self-regulation and self-management in asthma: exploring the role of illness perceptions and treatment beliefs in explaining non-adherence to preventer medications. *Psychol Health.* 2002;17:17-32.
79. Horne R, Buick D, Fisher M, et al. Doubts about necessity and concerns about adverse effects: identifying the types of beliefs that are associated with non-adherence to HAART. *Int J STD AIDS.* 2004;15(1):38-44.
80. Horne R, Cooper V, Gellaitry G, et al. Patients' perceptions of highly active antiretroviral therapy in relation to treatment uptake and adherence: the utility of the necessity-concerns framework. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr.* 2007;45(3):334-341.
81. Nicolucci A, Kovacs Burns K, Holt RI, et al. Diabetes Attitudes, Wishes and Needs second study (DAWN2™): cross-national benchmarking of diabetes-related psychosocial outcomes for people with diabetes. *Diabet Med.* 2013;30(7):767-777.
82. Polonsky WH, Hajos TR, Dain MP, et al. Are patients with type 2 diabetes reluctant to start insulin therapy? An examination of the scope and underpinnings of psychological insulin resistance in a large, international population. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2011;27(6):1169-1174.
83. Peyrot M, Barnett AH, Meneghini LF, et al. Insulin adherence behaviours and barriers in the multinational Global Attitudes of Patients and Physicians in Insulin Therapy study. *Diabet Med.* 2012;29(5):682-689.
84. Lyles CR, Seligman HK, Parker MM, et al. Financial strain and medication adherence among diabetes patients in an integrated health care delivery system: The diabetes study of Northern California (DISTANCE). *Health Serv Res.* 2016;51(2):610-624.
85. Piette JD, Wagner TH, Potter MB, et al. Health insurance status, cost-related medication underuse, and outcomes among diabetes patients in three systems of care. *Med Care.* 2004;42(2):102-109.
86. Heisler M, Wagner TH, Piette JD. Patient strategies to cope with high prescription medication costs: who is cutting back on necessities, increasing debt, or underusing medications? *J Behav Med.* 2005;28(1):43-51.
87. Cunningham PJ. High medical cost burdens, patient trust, and perceived quality of care. *J Gen Intern Med.* 2009;24(3):415-420.
88. Cheong C, Barner JC, Lawson KA, et al. Patient adherence and reimbursement amount for antidiabetic fixed-dose combination products compared with dual therapy among Texas Medicaid recipients. *Clin Ther.* 2008;30(10):1893-1907.
89. Barner JC. Adherence to oral antidiabetic agents with pioglitazone and metformin: comparison of fixed-dose combination therapy with monotherapy and loose-dose combination therapy. *Clin Ther.* 2011;33(9):1281-1288.
90. Lokhandwala T, Smith N, Sternhufvud C, et al. A retrospective study of persistence, adherence, and health economic outcomes of fixed-dose combination vs. loose-dose combination of oral anti-diabetes drugs. *J Med Econ.* 2016;19(3):203-212.
91. Benford M, Milligan G, Pike J, et al. Fixed-dose combination antidiabetic therapy: real-world factors associated with prescribing choices and relationship with patient satisfaction and compliance.*Adv Ther.* 2012;29(1):26-40.
92. Mathieu C, Hollander P, Miranda-Palma B, et al. Efficacy and safety of insulin degludec in a flexible dosing regimen vs insulin glargine in patients with type 1 diabetes (BEGIN: Flex T1): A 26-week randomized, treat-to-target trial with a 26-week extension. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2013;98(3):1154-1162.
93. Meneghini L, Atkin SL, Gough SC, et al. The efficacy and safety of insulin degludec given in variable once-daily dosing intervals compared with insulin glargine and insulin degludec dosed at the same time daily: A 26-week, randomized, open-label, parallel-group, treat-to-target trial in individuals with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2013;36(4):858-864.
94. Riddle MC, Bolli GB, Home PD, et al. Efficacy and safety of flexible versus fixed dosing intervals of insulin glargine 300 U/mL in people with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2016;18(4):252-257.
95. Cai J, Wang Y, Baser O, et al. Comparative persistence and adherence with newer antihyperglycemic agents to treat patients with type 2 diabetes in the United States. *J Med Econ.* 2016;19(12):1175-1186.
96. Johnston SS, Nguyen H, Felber E, et al. Retrospective study of adherence to glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonist therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus in the United States. *Adv Ther.* 2014;31(11):1119-1133.
97. Fabunmi R, Nielsen LL, Quimbo R, et al. Patient characteristics, drug adherence patterns, and hypoglycemia costs for patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus newly initiated on exenatide or insulin glargine. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2009;25(3):777-786.
98. Winner B, Peipert JF, Zhao Q, et al. Effectiveness of long-acting reversible contraception. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;366(21):1998-2007.
99. Hubacher D, Spector H, Monteith C, et al. Long-acting reversible contraceptive acceptability and unintended pregnancy among women presenting for short-acting methods: a randomized patient preference trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol.* 2017;216(2):101-109.
100. Armstrong MA, Postlethwaite DA, Darbinian JA, et al. Are health plan design and prior use of long-acting reversible contraception associated with pregnancy intention? *J Womens Health (Larchmt).* 2016;doi:0.1089/jwh.2014.5146.
101. Xie L, Zhou S, Wei W, et al. Does pen help? A real-world outcomes study of switching from vial to disposable pen among insulin glargine-treated patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2013;15(3):230-236.
102. DeVries JH, Snoek FJ, Kostense PJ, et al. A randomized trial of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion and intensive injection therapy in type 1 diabetes for patients with long-standing poor glycemic control. *Diabetes Care.* 2002;25(11):2074-2080.
103. Polonsky WH, Hessler D, Layne JE, et al. Impact of the Omnipod® insulin management system on quality of life: A survey of current users. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2016;18(10):664-670.
104. Henry RR, Rosenstock J, Logan D, et al. Continuous subcutaneous delivery of exenatide via ITCA 650 leads to sustained glycemic control and weight loss for 48 weeks in metformin-treated subjects with type 2 diabetes. *J Diabetes Complications.* 2014;28(3):393-398.
105. Henry RR, Logan D, Alessi T, et al. A randomized, open-label, multicenter, 4-week study to evaluate the tolerability and pharmacokinetics of ITCA 650 in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Clin Ther.* 2013;35(5):634-645.
106. Rosenstock J, Buse JB, Azeem R, et al. Clinical impact of ITCA 650 in type 2 diabetes: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, 39-week trial. Paper presented at: American Diabetes Association 75th Scientific Sessions; June 5-9, 2014; Boston, MA.
107. Rosenstock J, Denham D, Prabhakar P, et al. Superior efficacy of ITCA 650 vs. sitagliptin in uncontrolled type 2 diabetes on metformin: The FREEDOM-2 randomized, double-blind, 1-year study. Paper presented at: American Diabetes Association 76th Scientific Sessions; June 10-14, 2016; New Orleans, LA.

# The Cardiovascular Safety of Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs: Putting the Evidence in Perspective

Martin Quan, MD

## INTRODUCTION

Pain and inflammation are common complaints experienced by all humans at some time during their lifetime. Among the wide variety of available analgesics, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are commonly used for relief of acute and chronic pain. Data from the 2010 National Health Interview Survey suggest that approximately 43 million adults in the United States took aspirin at least 3 times per week for more than 3 months, while more than 29 million adults used an NSAID regularly.[1] Traditional NSAIDs (tNSAIDs), such as aspirin, ibuprofen, naproxen, and diclofenac, represent an effective, long-lasting option that may offer advantages over cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) selective NSAIDs, such as celecoxib. The use of NSAIDs is not without controversy, however.

The Vioxx Gastrointestinal Outcomes Research (VIGOR) trial, published in 2000, was the first to raise concerns that NSAIDs (specifically, the COX-2 selective inhibitor rofecoxib) might be associated with a higher risk for cardiovascular (CV) events.[2] As discussed below, subsequent trials and meta-analyses have demonstrated a higher CV risk with use of not only COX-2 inhibitors (coxibs) but also certain tNSAIDs. These investigations have contributed to actions by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), most recently in July 2015, requiring strengthening of CV risk warnings on labels for all prescription and over-the-counter NSAIDs, despite evidence suggesting that differences in CV risk may exist among the NSAIDs.

To address unanswered questions regarding CV risk of coxibs vs tNSAIDs, the FDA mandated a comparison of celecoxib with 2 tNSAIDs, ibuprofen and naproxen.[3] As a result, the Prospective Randomized Evaluation of Celecoxib Integrated Safety versus Ibuprofen Or Naproxen (PRECISION) trial was launched in 2006. PRECISION was a noninferiority trial to assess CV outcomes with long-term use, with secondary end points such as gastrointestinal (GI), renal, and other outcomes. The results of the PRECISION trial, published in November 2016, are difficult to interpret because of the study's limitations and may have contributed to confusion regarding the CV safety of NSAIDs. Before further discussing the PRECISION trial and its implications for primary care providers, it is important to put the PRECISION trial in perspective by highlighting the pharmacologic differences among the NSAIDs and their implications for CV safety and considering a historical review of key CV safety trials involving NSAIDs.

## CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY OF NSAIDs

NSAIDs reduce pain and inflammation through inhibition of the cyclooxygenase enzyme, resulting in downstream inhibition of the production of thromboxane $A_2$ ($TxA_2$), prostacyclin, and other prostanoids.[4] The analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects of NSAIDs largely result from inhibition of the COX-2 isoform at sites of inflammation, while gastrointestinal and other adverse events stem from inhibition of COX-1 isoforms, which are constitutive, present in most organs, and primarily serve a homeostatic function. For example, in the stomach, COX-1 mediates a cytoprotective effect, helping maintain mucosal integrity by increasing mucosal blood flow and increasing GI mucus and bicarbonate secretion.[4,5] Inhibition of COX-1 is the mechanism primarily responsible for the gastric and duodenal ulceration and bleeding long associated with tNSAID use.

In vascular endothelium, COX-2 is involved in the production of prostacyclin (PGI2), which antagonizes platelet activation and produces vasodilation, whereas in platelets, COX-1 is responsible for the production of $TxA_2$, which causes platelet activation and vasoconstriction. It is thought that the selective inhibition of COX-2 by coxibs results in a relative reduction in endothelial PGI2 synthesis, leaving platelet production of $TxA_2$ intact. As a result, it has been theorized that coxibs shift the balance of prostaglandin

**Martin Quan, MD,** Professor of Clinical Family Medicine, David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, Vice Chair for Academic Affairs, UCLA Department of Family Medicine, Los Angeles, CA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Quan discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored and developed by Primary Care Education Consortium.

production to $TxA_2$ at the platelet-vascular endothelial interface, thereby favoring thrombogenic stimulation and arterial vasoconstriction and a greater risk for an atherothrombotic cardiovascular event.[6]

Although COX-2 selectivity is a likely contributor to the higher CV risk seen with NSAID use, it is not the only factor, given that a higher CV risk has been seen with both coxibs as well as tNSAIDs. Other important variables implicated in NSAID risk include dosage, half-life, impact on blood pressure, and interaction with aspirin.[7]

## ASPIRIN INTERACTION

In contrast to inhibition of arachidonic acid observed with other NSAIDs, aspirin causes an irreversible inactivation of COX-1 and COX-2. Inhibition of COX-1 is responsible for the antiplatelet effects of aspirin and its cardioprotective effect.[4]

The coadministration of some tNSAIDs, eg, ibuprofen and naproxen (but not COX-2 selective inhibitors), with low-dose aspirin (LD-ASA) causes transient and modest inhibition of COX-1 and has been shown to interfere with the antiplatelet effect of aspirin.[7,8] The effect of naproxen on the antiplatelet effect of LD-ASA may be lower than with ibuprofen.[9] Concerns that such an interaction might reduce the cardioprotective effect of LD-ASA resulted in an advisory from the FDA in 2007 recommending ibuprofen be taken at least 30 minutes after aspirin to avoid any potential interaction.[10] Taking naproxen 2 hours after aspirin appears to lessen the interference.[11] Furthermore, there is evidence that suggests that high-dose naproxen at a prescription dose of 500 mg twice daily may actually produce its own aspirin-like antiplatelet effect.[12]

The variable effect of NSAIDs to interfere with the ability of aspirin to inhibit platelet activation may be due to differences in their ability to form hydrogen bonds with specific amino acids within the COX-1 hydrophobic channel.[13] The possibility of differences among NSAIDs with respect to an interaction with aspirin is of clinical importance as many patients who use NSAIDs for anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects often use LD-ASA to prevent CV events. This becomes a particularly important consideration in older adults with osteoarthritic pain, who are likely to be at increased CV risk.[14]

## CARDIOVASCULAR SAFETY

The CV safety of NSAIDs has been assessed in hundreds of clinical trials over the past almost 2 decades. Details regarding several key clinical trials are provided in the **TABLE**.[2,15-22] These trials show that NSAIDs variably alter the rate of thromboembolic events and suggest that NSAIDs with a greater affinity for COX-2, particularly at higher doses, are associated with a higher CV risk.

## KEY PROSPECTIVE CLINICAL TRIALS

The VIGOR trial was the first trial to suggest a higher incidence of adverse CV outcomes with COX-2 selective inhibitors compared with tNSAIDs.[2] After a median follow-up of 9 months, the incidence of myocardial infarction (MI) was found to be 4-fold higher with rofecoxib than naproxen (0.4% vs 0.1%, respectively).[2] A post hoc analysis was also concerning, showing that the relative risk for developing a confirmed, adjudicated thrombotic CV event with rofecoxib compared with naproxen was 2.38 (95% confidence interval [CI], 1.39-4.00).[15]

The Adenoma Prevention with Celecoxib (APC) trial compared 2 doses of celecoxib (200 mg or 400 mg twice daily) with placebo for the prevention of colorectal adenomas.[16] After approximately 3 years of follow-up, the study was terminated early because of a dose-related increase in a composite of CV events with celecoxib.

The Adenomatous Polyp Prevention on Vioxx (APPROVe) trial determined the effect of rofecoxib vs placebo on the risk for recurrent neoplastic polyps of the large bowel in patients with a history of colorectal adenomas.[17] The rate of a confirmed thrombotic event was significantly higher with rofecoxib, becoming apparent after 18 months of treatment. The results primarily reflect a greater number of MIs and ischemic cerebrovascular events in the rofecoxib group. The results of the APPROVe trial contributed to the withdrawal of rofecoxib from the market in 2004.

The Therapeutic Arthritis Research and Gastrointestinal Event Trial (TARGET) assessed the CV outcomes in high-risk patients with osteoarthritis. TARGET comprised 2 parallel substudies comparing the COX-2 selective inhibitor lumiracoxib (not available in the United States) 400 mg daily with either ibuprofen 800 mg three times daily or naproxen 500 mg twice daily.[18] In aspirin users, ibuprofen was associated with a significantly higher rate of CV events at 1 year compared with lumiracoxib, whereas naproxen was not. In nonaspirin users, naproxen was associated with significantly fewer CV events compared with lumiracoxib, whereas ibuprofen was not. In addition, ibuprofen was associated with a higher rate of congestive heart failure. Shortcomings of this trial included the post hoc design; not being appropriately powered for CV safety, resulting in imprecision due to the small number of events in the subgroups; the use of aspirin in some but not all patients for unspecified reasons; lack of data collection on aspirin use during the study; and a lack of a placebo arm, making it difficult to evaluate absolute CV risk.

The Alzheimer's Disease Anti-Inflammatory Prevention Trial (ADAPT) evaluated naproxen 220 mg twice daily and celecoxib 200 mg twice daily with placebo for the primary prevention of Alzheimer's dementia.[19] After the results of the APC trial were released, the ADAPT study was terminated,

**TABLE** Evidence concerning the cardiovascular risks associated with COX-2 inhibitors

| Trial; year(s) conducted | Design; patients | Treatment | Results[a] | Limitations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| VIGOR, 1999[2,15] | R, DB, MC<br>Patients with RA (N=8076) | Rofecoxib 50 mg/d<br>vs<br>Naproxen 500 mg bid<br>(median follow-up 9 mos) | GI events (per 100 PY): 2.1 vs 4.5 (HR, 0.5; 95% CI, 0.3-0.6)<br>MI: 0.4% vs 0.1%<br>MACE[b]: HR, 2.38; 95% CI, 1.39-4.00 | Withdrawal from treatment: 29.3% vs 28.5%; not placebo-controlled |
| APC, 1999-2002[16] | R, DB, MC<br>Patients at risk for colorectal adenoma (N=2035) | Celecoxib 200 mg bid<br>vs<br>Celecoxib 400 mg bid<br>vs<br>Placebo<br>(2.8-3.1 y follow-up) | MACE[c]: HR vs PBO: HR, 2.3; 95% CI, 0.9-5.5; HR, 3.4; 95% CI, 1.4-7.8 | |
| APPROVe, 2000-2001[17] | R, DB, MC<br>Patients with colorectal adenoma (N=2586) | Rofecoxib 25 mg/d<br>vs<br>Placebo<br>X 3 y | Thrombotic event[d] (per 100 PY): 1.50 vs 0.78 (HR, 1.92; 95% CI, 1.19-3.11)<br>Cardiac events (per 100 PY): 1.01 vs 0.36 (HR, 2.80; 95% CI, 1.44-5.45)<br>Cerebrovascular events (per 100 PY): 0.49 vs 0.21 (HR, 2.32; 95% CI, 0.89-6.74) | Withdrawal from treatment: 31.9% vs 24.6% |
| TARGET, 2001-2002[18] | R, DB, MC<br>Patients with OA ages ≥50 y<br>(N=18,325) | Lumiracoxib 400 mg/d<br>vs<br>Ibuprofen 800 mg tid<br>X 52 wks | High-risk using aspirin (75-100 mg/d): MACE[e]: 0.25% vs 2.14% (HR, 9.08; 95% CI, 1.13-72.8)<br>High-risk not using aspirin: MACE[e]: 0.80% vs 0.92% (HR, 0.91; 95% CI, 0.15-5.47) | Post hoc analysis; not placebo-controlled; few events; withdrawal from treatment: 43% |
| | | Lumiracoxib 400 mg/d<br>vs<br>Naproxen 500 mg bid<br>X 52 wks | High-risk using aspirin (75-100 mg/d): MACE[e]: 1.48% vs 1.58% (HR, 1.07; 95% CI, 0.40-2.84)<br>High-risk not using aspirin: MACE[e]: 1.57% vs 0% (HR, N/A) | |
| ADAPT, 2001-2004[19] | R, DB, MC<br>Patients ages ≥70 y with family history of AD (N=2528) | Celecoxib 200 mg bid<br>vs<br>Naproxen 220 mg bid<br>vs<br>Placebo<br>X 3 y | MACE[f]: 5.54% vs 8.25% vs 5.68% [HR vs PBO: HR,1.10; 95% CI, 0.67-1.79; HR, 1.63; 95% CI, 1.04-2.55] | |

CONTINUED

with a median of approximately 15 months of treatment. ADAPT findings suggested the cardiovascular and cerebrovascular risks with celecoxib were similar to placebo. The CV risk was significantly greater with naproxen compared with placebo, due to a higher incidence of heart failure and transient ischemic attack. Besides early termination, the study had several limitations, including that it was not designed to detect differences in CV or cerebrovascular risk and was not appropriately powered for CV safety, resulting in imprecision due to the small number of events; the patient population had unknown CV risk at baseline, complicating extrapolation to the general population; and there was no a priori procedure for adjudication of CV or cerebrovascular events.

Lastly, the Standard care versus Celecoxib Outcome Trial (SCOT) was a prospective, open, blinded end point trial that compared the CV and GI safety of celecoxib with a variety of tNSAIDs (eg, diclofenac, ibuprofen, naproxen, meloxicam) in patients ages >60 years with osteoarthritis (OA) or rheumatoid arthritis (RA) but free of CV disease.[20] Over a median of 3 years, fewer patients than expected developed an on-treatment CV event with a rate similar for celecoxib and tNSAIDs.[21] Although the trial was conducted in the United Kingdom, Denmark, and the Netherlands, full data regarding mean NSAID daily doses were available only in Scotland: celecoxib 169.8 mg (standard deviation [SD], 80.6), diclofenac 79.4 mg (SD, 38.3), ibuprofen 675.9 mg (SD, 345.9), and

**TABLE Evidence concerning the cardiovascular risks associated with COX-2 inhibitors (*Continued*)**

| Trial; year(s) conducted | Design; patients | Treatment | Results[a] | Limitations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Danish Registry, 1997-2006[22] | Retrospective review of national registry<br>Patients ages ≥30 y with first-time MI (N=83,675) | Any NSAID | Risk for death or recurrent MI (>90 days treatment)<br>All NSAIDs: HR, 1.55; 95% CI, 1.46-1.64<br>Rofecoxib: HR, 1.72; 95% CI, 1.45-2.04<br>Celecoxib: HR, 1.65; 95% CI, 1.42-1.92<br>Ibuprofen: HR, 1.53; 95% CI, 1.40-1.69<br>Diclofenac: HR, 1.92; 95% CI, 1.66-2.22<br>Naproxen: HR, 1.50; 95% CI, 0.10-2.05<br>Other NSAIDs: HR, 1.44; 95% CI, 1.28-1.62 | Observational design; informational bias |
| SCOT, 2008-2013[20,21] | PROBE, MC<br>Patients ages ≥60 y with OA or RA (N=7297) | Celecoxib ≤200 mg bid<br>vs<br>tNSAID[f]<br>(median follow-up 3 y) | MACE (per 100 PY)[h]: 1.14 vs 1.10 (HR, 1.04; 95% CI, 0.81-1.33)<br>Hospitalization or death for upper GI ulcer (per 100 PY): 0.09 vs 0.04 (HR, 2.08; 95% CI, 0.65-7.74) | Withdrawal from treatment: 48.2% vs 31.5% |

**Abbreviations:** AD, Alzheimer's disease; ADAPT, Alzheimer's Disease Anti-inflammatory Prevention Trial; APC, Adenoma Prevention with Celecoxib; APPROVe, Adenomatous Polyp Prevention on Vioxx; bid, twice daily; CHF, congestive heart failure; CV, cardiovascular; d, day; DB, double-blind; GI, gastrointestinal; HR, hazard ratio; MACE, major adverse cardiovascular events; MC, multicenter; MI, myocardial infarction; N/A, not applicable; N, number; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; OA, osteoarthritis; PBO, placebo; PROBE, prospective, randomized, open-label, blinded endpoint evaluation; PY, person-years; R, randomized; RA, rheumatoid arthritis; SCOT, Standard care versus Celecoxib Outcome Trial; TARGET, Therapeutic Arthritis Research and Gastrointestinal Event Trial; tid, 3 times daily; tNSAID, traditional, ie, non-COX-2 selective NSAID; VIGOR, Vioxx Gastrointestinal Outcomes Research; wks, weeks; y, year(s).

[a]95% confidence interval.

[b]Composite of MI, unstable angina, cardiac thrombus, resuscitated cardiac arrest, sudden or unexplained death, ischemic stroke, transient ischemic attack

[c]Composite of CV death, MI, stroke, heart failure.

[d]Composite of fatal and nonfatal MI, unstable angina, sudden cardiac death, fatal and nonfatal ischemic stroke, transient ischemic attack, peripheral arterial thrombosis, peripheral venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism.

[e]Composite of CV death, nonfatal MI, stroke.

[f]Composite of CV death, MI, stroke, congestive heart failure, transient ischemic attack.

[g]Ibuprofen, aceclofenac, acemetacin, dexibuprofen, dexketoprofen, diclofenac sodium, diflunisal, etodolac, fenbufen, fenoprofen, flurbiprofen, ibuprofen, indometacin, ketoprofen, mefenamic acid, meloxicam, nabumetone, naproxen, piroxicam, sulindac, tenoxicam, tiaprofenic acid, diclofenac/misoprostol.

[h]Composite of hospitalization for nonfatal MI or other biomarker for positive acute coronary syndrome, nonfatal stroke, or CV death.

naproxen 581.9 mg (SD, 263.4). Significantly more patients withdrew from celecoxib than tNSAIDS, with the dominant reason being lack of efficacy. The rate of NSAID-associated GI complications was low (attributed by the authors to the coadministration of concomitant anti-ulcer agents as well as the relatively low doses of the NSAIDs used; as expected, the rate was higher with tNSAIDs than with celecoxib.

## DANISH REGISTRY STUDY

A nationwide registry of Danish patients ages ≥30 years admitted with first-time MI was analyzed to assess NSAID use and CV risk. Overall, NSAID treatment was significantly associated with an increased risk for death/recurrent MI commencing within 7 days of treatment initiation (hazard ratio [HR], 1.45; 95% CI, 1.29-1.62).[22] The risks persisted over more than 5 years of follow-up, with an increased risk for death (HR, 1.60; 95% CI, 1.49-1.71) and coronary death or nonfatal recurrent MI (HR, 1.41; 95% CI, 1.29-1.56).[23] The risk for coronary death or nonfatal recurrent MI was greater with rofecoxib (HR, 2.19; 95% CI, 1.27-3.77) than with celecoxib (HR, 1.17; 95% CI, 0.63-2.17). Among the most commonly used tNSAIDs, the risk was greatest with diclofenac (HR, 1.58; 95% CI, 1.31-1.91) and lowest with naproxen (HR, 1.15; 95% CI, 0.71-1.85).

The bleeding rates were also significantly greater in patients treated with NSAID therapy. The risk for a CV event or bleeding was independent of concomitant antithrombotic treatment.[24] These results suggest that NSAIDs should be used cautiously, if at all, in patients with a history of MI.

## META-ANALYSES

Meta-analyses have been conducted to assess the CV risk of NSAIDs. The McGettigan-Henry meta-analysis examined population-based controlled observational studies of individual NSAIDs used at typical doses in community settings.[25] Trelle et al conducted a network meta-analysis of 31 large-scale, randomized controlled trials comparing any NSAID with another NSAID or placebo.[26] The Coxib and Traditional NSAID Trialists' (CNT) Collaboration identified 639 randomized

trials of an NSAID vs placebo or 1 NSAID regimen vs another for analysis. It included 297 trials that compared a COX-2 selective NSAID vs placebo or a COX-2 selective NSAID vs tNSAID.[27]

The 3 meta-analyses yielded generally similar results, suggesting that all NSAIDs are associated with an increased CV risk, with naproxen conferring the lowest risk. The CNT analysis showed the estimated relative risk for major CV events among the tNSAIDs vs placebo was highest with diclofenac (HR, 1.41; 95% CI, 1.12-1.78) and ibuprofen (HR, 1.44; 95% CI, 0.89-2.33) and lowest with naproxen (HR, 0.93; 95% CI, 0.69-1.27).[27] Although the CNT analysis demonstrated a similar risk for major CV events with rofecoxib and celecoxib, the McGettigan-Henry analysis showed a higher risk with rofecoxib (HR, 1.45; 95% CI, 1.33-1.59) vs celecoxib (HR, 1.17; 95% CI, 1.08-1.27). [25,27] All 3 meta-analyses provided support to the premise that the CV risk associated with celecoxib was dose-dependent, with the CNT and the McGettigan-Henry analyses suggesting no increased risk with doses of 200 mg daily. In addition to looking at CV risk, the CNT analysis also examined upper GI complications (ie, upper GI bleeding and/or perforation, or peptic ulcer) and showed the risk to be nearly twice as high for ibuprofen and naproxen compared with diclofenac or a coxib.[27]

## US FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION ACTIONS

Following publication of the CNT meta-analysis, the FDA convened 2 advisory panels to review this and other related information.[28] Results of this meeting, as well as its own analysis, led the FDA to issue a drug safety communication in July 2015 that required prescription NSAID labels to communicate the following:

- The risk for heart attack or stroke can occur as early as the first weeks of using an NSAID. The risk may increase with longer use of the NSAID.
- The risk appears greater at higher doses.
- It was previously thought that all NSAIDs may have a similar risk. Newer information makes it less clear that the risk for heart attack or stroke is similar for all NSAIDs; however, this newer information is not sufficient for us to determine that the risk of any particular NSAID is definitely higher or lower than that of any other particular NSAID.
- NSAIDs can increase the risk for heart attack or stroke in patients with or without heart disease or risk factors for heart disease. A large number of studies support this finding, with varying estimates of how much the risk is increased, depending on the drugs and the doses studied.
- In general, patients with heart disease or risk factors for it have a greater likelihood of heart attack or stroke following NSAID use than patients without these risk factors because they have a higher risk at baseline.
- Patients treated with NSAIDs following a first heart attack were more likely to die in the first year after the heart attack compared with patients who were not treated with NSAIDs after their first heart attack.
- There is an increased risk for heart failure with NSAID use.

## PRECISION TRIAL

This CV safety trial mandated by the FDA in 2014 was initiated in 2006 following a 2004 FDA review. The PRECISION trial enrolled patients who required NSAID therapy for OA or RA and were deemed at high CV risk for CV disease based on having established CV disease or risk factors for CV disease (approximately 35% of patients had a history of diabetes, 78% a history of hypertension, and 62% a history of dyslipidemia). Patients were randomized to celecoxib 100 to 200 mg twice daily, ibuprofen 600 to 800 mg three times daily, or naproxen 375 to 500 mg twice daily.[3] The primary endpoint was noninferiority on the composite of CV death (including hemorrhagic death), nonfatal MI, or nonfatal stroke. A total of 24,081 patients were randomized with a mean treatment duration of 20.3 months and a mean follow-up period of 34.1 months. During the trial, 68.8% of patients stopped taking the treatment drug and 27.4% discontinued follow-up.

Celecoxib was found to be noninferior to ibuprofen and naproxen with regard to CV safety, with the primary endpoint occurring in 2.3% of celecoxib patients compared with 2.7% and 2.5% of ibuprofen and naproxen patients, respectively.[3] Hazard ratios for celecoxib were 0.85 (95% CI, 0.70-1.04) vs ibuprofen and 0.93 (95% CI, 0.76-1.13) vs naproxen ($P$<.001 for both). In contrast, pairwise comparisons for each of the components of the primary endpoint showed no significant differences between celecoxib and ibuprofen as well as celecoxib and naproxen. As expected, based on their mechanistic differences, the risk for GI events was significantly lower with celecoxib than with ibuprofen ($P$=.002) or naproxen ($P$=.01). The risk for renal events was significantly lower with celecoxib compared with ibuprofen ($P$=.004) but not compared with naproxen ($P$=.19).

The design and results of PRECISION have been questioned and its findings should be interpreted with caution.[29] In addition to high rates of patients discontinuing the study drug as well as discontinuing follow-up, the rate of primary outcome events occurring during the study period was considerably lower than expected and appeared more indicative of a study group at relatively low risk for CV events. Because of this lower rate and problems with subject recruitment, the statistical power for noninferiority, which was originally planned to be 90%, was relaxed to 80%, thereby lessening the reliability of any judgment of noninferiority. Moreover, based

on prior studies, the CV risk associated with celecoxib use appears dose-related. In the PRECISION trial, the mean daily celecoxib dose of 209 mg may be considered low dose[30] and lower than that associated with increased CV risk. For comparison, the mean daily doses of ibuprofen and naproxen were 2045 mg and 852 mg, respectively. Lastly, since interference with the antiplatelet activity of LD-ASA and potential negation of its cardioprotective effect is not a class effect (ie, both naproxen and ibuprofen have been shown to interfere with the antiplatelet activity of aspirin, whereas celecoxib has not), the failure to control for use of LD-ASA use introduces a potential source of bias favoring celecoxib and calls into question any conclusions in this regard.

## SUMMARY

At the present time, the totality of evidence suggests that all NSAIDs are associated with an increased risk for adverse CV events. Several factors are involved, including COX-2 selectivity, dosage, half-life, impact on blood pressure, and interaction with aspirin. Although the evidentiary standard needed by the FDA to rank order NSAID compounds with regard to CV risk has not been met, the balance of evidence continues to favor naproxen as the safest NSAID from a CV perspective. A caveat is that naproxen may also pose a higher risk for an upper GI bleed than other tNSAIDs. Although data from the SCOT trial and the PRECISION trial support the improved CV safety of low-dose celecoxib (200 mg daily) seen in earlier studies, the shortcomings of these 2 trials serve only to raise doubt regarding any conclusions about the comparative safety of the NSAID agents studied and leaves unanswered the question of differential CV risk.

Although widely used and clinically valuable, NSAID use is not without risk. When considering the use of an NSAID, careful consideration of risk factors associated with NSAID toxicity should be given, including the patient's age and the risk for developing renal, GI, and CV complications. NSAIDs should be used only with due caution in patients with known CV disease and are best avoided in patients following an MI. Until definitive evidence becomes available, it remains prudent to follow the basic rule of prescribing the lowest effective dose of an NSAID for the shortest duration possible. ●


**REFERENCES**

1. Zhou Y, Boudreau DM, Freedman AN. Trends in the use of aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in the general U.S. population. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf.* 2014;23(1):43-50.
2. Bombardier C, Laine L, Reicin A, et al. Comparison of upper gastrointestinal toxicity of rofecoxib and naproxen in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. VIGOR Study Group. *N Engl J Med.* 2000;343(21):1520-1528,2 p following 1528.
3. Nissen SE, Yeomans ND, Solomon DH, et al. Cardiovascular Safety of celecoxib, naproxen, or ibuprofen for arthritis. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(26):2519-2529.
4. Brune K, Patrignani P. New insights into the use of currently available non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *J Pain Res.* 2015;8:105-118.
5. Whittle BJ. COX-1 and COX-2 products in the gut: therapeutic impact of COX-2 inhibitors. *Gut.* 2000;47(3):320-325.
6. Yu Y, Ricciotti E, Scalia R, et al. Vascular COX-2 modulates blood pressure and thrombosis in mice. *Sci Transl Med.* 2012;4(132):132ra54.
7. Farkouh ME, Greenberg BP. An evidence-based review of the cardiovascular risks of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *Am J Cardiol.* 2009;103(9):1227-1237.
8. Schmidt M, Lamberts M, Olsen AM, et al. Cardiovascular safety of non-aspirin non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: review and position paper by the working group for Cardiovascular Pharmacotherapy of the European Society of Cardiology. *Eur Heart J.* 2016;37(13):1015-1023.
9. Farkouh ME, Kirshner H, Harrington RA, et al. Comparison of lumiracoxib with naproxen and ibuprofen in the Therapeutic Arthritis Research and Gastrointestinal Event Trial (TARGET), cardiovascular outcomes: randomised controlled trial. *Lancet.* 2004;364(9435):675-684.
10. Antman EM, Bennett JS, Daugherty A, et al. Use of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs: an update for clinicians: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2007;115(12):1634-1642.
11. Anzellotti P, Capone ML, Jeyam A, et al. Low-dose naproxen interferes with the antiplatelet effects of aspirin in healthy subjects: recommendations to minimize the functional consequences. *Arthritis Rheum.* 2011;63(3):850-859.
12. Patrono C, Baigent C. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the heart. *Circulation.* 2014;129(8):907-916.
13. Saxena A, Balaramnavar VM, Hohlfeld T, et al. Drug/drug interaction of common NSAIDs with antiplatelet effect of aspirin in human platelets. *Eur J Pharmacol.* 2013;721(1-3):215-224.
14. Mamdani M, Juurlink DN, Lee DS, et al. Cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitors versus non-selective non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and congestive heart failure outcomes in elderly patients: a population-based cohort study. *Lancet.* 2004;363(9423):1751-1756.
15. Mukherjee D, Nissen SE, Topol EJ. Risk of cardiovascular events associated with selective COX-2 inhibitors. *JAMA.* 2001;286(8):954-959.
16. Solomon SD, McMurray JJ, Pfeffer MA, et al. Cardiovascular risk associated with celecoxib in a clinical trial for colorectal adenoma prevention. *N Engl J Med.* 2005;352(11):1071-1080.
17. Bresalier RS, Sandler RS, Quan H, et al. Cardiovascular events associated with rofecoxib in a colorectal adenoma chemoprevention trial. *N Engl J Med.* 2005;352(11):1092-1102.
18. Farkouh ME, Greenberg JD, Jeger RV, et al. Cardiovascular outcomes in high risk patients with osteoarthritis treated with ibuprofen, naproxen or lumiracoxib. *Ann Rheum Dis.* 2007;66(6):764-770.
19. ADAPT Research Group. Cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events in the randomized, controlled Alzheimer's Disease Anti-Inflammatory Prevention Trial (ADAPT). *PLoS Clin Trials.* 2006;1(7):e33.
20. MacDonald TM, Mackenzie IS, Wei L, et al. Methodology of a large prospective, randomised, open, blinded endpoint streamlined safety study of celecoxib versus traditional non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in patients with osteoarthritis or rheumatoid arthritis: protocol of the standard care versus celecoxib outcome trial (SCOT). *BMJ Open.* 2013;3(1).
21. MacDonald TM, Hawkey CJ, Ford I, et al. Randomized trial of switching from prescribed non-selective non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs to prescribed celecoxib: the Standard care vs. Celecoxib Outcome Trial (SCOT). *Eur Heart J.* 2016. doi:https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehw387.
22. Schjerning Olsen AM, Fosbøl EL, Lindhardsen J, et al. Duration of treatment with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and impact on risk of death and recurrent myocardial infarction in patients with prior myocardial infarction: a nationwide cohort study. *Circulation.* 2011;123(20):2226-2235.
23. Olsen AM, Fosbøl EL, Lindhardsen J, et al. Long-term cardiovascular risk of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug use according to time passed after first-time myocardial infarction: a nationwide cohort study. *Circulation.* 2012;126(16):1955-1963.
24. Schjerning Olsen AM, Gislason GH, McGettigan P, et al. Association of NSAID use with risk of bleeding and cardiovascular events in patients receiving antithrombotic therapy after myocardial infarction. *JAMA.* 2015;313(8):805-814.
25. McGettigan P, Henry D. Cardiovascular risk with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: systematic review of population-based controlled observational studies. *PLoS Med.* 2011;8(9):e1001098.
26. Trelle S, Reichenbach S, Wandel S, et al. Cardiovascular safety of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: network meta-analysis. *BMJ.* 2011;342:c7086.
27. Bhala N, Emberson J, Merhi A, et al. Vascular and upper gastrointestinal effects of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: meta-analyses of individual participant data from randomised trials. *Lancet.* 2013;382(9894):769-779.
28. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA briefing document: Joint meeting of the Arthritis Advisory Committee and the Drug Safety and Risk Management Advisory Committee. February 10-11, 2014. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/AdvisoryCommittees/CommitteesMeetingMaterials/Drugs/ArthritisAdvisoryCommittee/UCM383180.pdf. Published 2014. Accessed February 2, 2017.
29. FitzGerald GA. ImPRECISION: Limitations to interpretation of a large randomized clinical trial. *Circulation.* 2016;135(2):113-115.
30. Felson DT. Safety of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(26):2595-2596.

# Sublingual Immunotherapy: A Guide for Primary Care

Eli O. Meltzer, MD

## INTRODUCTION

Allergen immunotherapy (AIT), the only potential disease-modifying treatment for allergic disease, has been used for more than a century.[1] Hankin et al showed significant reduction in pharmacy, outpatient, and inpatient resources in the 6 months following vs the 6 months preceding AIT in Medicaid-enrolled children with allergic rhinitis (AR).[2] A 2013 analysis showed sustained cost reduction over 18 months in patients with AR treated with AIT compared with matched control subjects not treated with AIT.[3] The overall cost savings were 38% with AIT, which was similar to the cost savings observed in adults.

AIT is underused, partly because of the lack of familiarity of nonallergy/immunology-trained health care providers, and partly because of safety concerns (primarily anaphylaxis risk) associated with its subcutaneous administration.[1] These safety concerns, as well as practical and logistic considerations associated with administration of subcutaneous immunotherapy (SCIT), spurred interest in the use of sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT), which can be self-administered, does not require injections, and carries a much lower risk of anaphylaxis compared with SCIT.[4] While SLIT has been used outside the United States for decades, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has recently approved 4 SLIT allergen extract products (tablets) for treatment of the symptoms and morbidity associated with grass pollen, ragweed, or house dust mite AR, with or without conjunctivitis.

Grass and ragweed allergens are among the most common aeroallergens and characteristically cause seasonal allergic rhinoconjunctivitis (ARC) and/or seasonal allergic asthma. On the other hand, cat dander, cockroach, or dust mite allergens cause symptoms year-round and are associated with perennial AR and/or allergic asthma.[4]

Medical management of seasonal and perennial nasal allergic disease typically involves allergen avoidance and use of pharmacotherapeutic agents such as nonsedating oral antihistamines, intranasal antihistamines, intranasal cromolyn and, most importantly, intranasal corticosteroids.[5] Required daily use for efficacy raises concerns regarding long-term adherence, safety, and cost. Allergic asthma control with long-term use of inhaled steroids and long-acting bronchodilators also poses risks.[4]

Since allergic disease is an immunologic, systemic disorder with local manifestations, it is not surprising that treatment with immunotherapy can modify the underlying natural history of the disease, resulting in long-term efficacy (ie, immune tolerance) after termination of treatment.[6,7] Unlike pharmacotherapy, AIT can also reduce the incidence of subsequent asthma in patients with AR and reduce sensitization to new allergens.[8]

AIT is most beneficial for patients with moderate-to-severe intermittent or persistent symptoms of AR or ARC, particularly those whose symptoms are not responsive to pharmacotherapy and environmental control measures.[1]

### Mechanisms of SCIT and SLIT

Whether by the subcutaneous or sublingual route, administration of AIT leads to very early decrease in susceptibility of mast cells and basophils to degranulation (ie, rapid desensitization), possibly due to upregulation of histamine type 2 receptors and decreased effector cell function.[9] This is followed by generation of allergen-specific regulatory T cells and suppression of allergen-specific Th1 and Th2 cells, and, after several months, a significant decrease in the allergen-specific IgE/IgG4 ratio and a decrease in tissue mast cell and eosinophil numbers and release of mediators.[6]

Allergen extracts administered sublingually are taken up by dendritic cells in the oral mucosa and presented to T cells in the draining lymph nodes, likely resulting in activation of regulatory T cells and downregulation of mucosal mast cells.[10] The low level of effector cells such as mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils within the oral and sublingual mucosa

**Eli O. Meltzer, MD,** Clinical Professor of Pediatrics, Division of Allergy and Immunology, University of California, San Diego, CA

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Meltzer discloses that he is in on the advisory boards and speakers' bureaus for Merck & Co., Inc.; and Stallergenes Greer.

SUPPORT

This article is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Stallergenes Greer.

is believed to be an important factor in the lower rates of adverse systemic allergic reactions observed with SLIT compared with SCIT.[10]

## Subcutaneous immunotherapy

SCIT has been shown to be highly effective in reducing both symptoms and use of medications in patients with seasonal AR and ARC with or without asthma.[4,11] However, subcutaneous administration can be associated with systemic allergic reactions, including, rarely, anaphylaxis and death.[1,5] Therefore, SCIT must be administered in a setting with immediate access to resuscitative measures.

The discomfort of injections and inconvenience of office visits for SCIT also contribute to underuse of SCIT as a therapeutic option and to low adherence among patients.[1,12] A 2014 survey of patients' experience with AIT showed that, among patients treated with SCIT (n=456) or SLIT (n=34), only 61.8% and 52.9%, respectively, completed the recommended number of doses.[12] Although it might have been expected that adherence with SLIT would be higher than with SCIT because of the convenience of treatment at home, personal experience shows that adherence with SLIT also declines over time, as is generally the case with medication adherence. This indicates the importance of supporting patient self-management at each visit.

## Sublingual immunotherapy

### *Overview of available products*

In 2014, the FDA approved 3 sublingual tablets, 1 containing 5 grass pollen extracts (Oralair) and another containing 1 grass (Timothy) pollen extract (Grastek). The third product (Ragwitek) contains a short ragweed pollen extract. Oralair is indicated for the treatment of grass pollen-induced AR with or without conjunctivitis confirmed by positive skin test or in vitro testing for pollen-specific IgE antibodies for any of the 5 grass species contained in the product: Sweet Vernal grass, orchardgrass, perennial ryegrass, Timothy, and Kentucky bluegrass. In contrast, Grastek is limited to treatment of people with positive skin test or in vitro testing for pollen-specific IgE antibodies for Timothy grass or cross-reactive grass pollens.[13,14] There is low cross-allergenicity among the 5 grass species in the 5-grass pollen product and several of the southern grasses (particularly Bermuda grass).

The short ragweed pollen product Ragwitek is indicated for the treatment of short ragweed pollen-induced AR, with or without conjunctivitis, confirmed by positive skin test or in vitro testing for pollen-specific IgE antibodies for short ragweed pollen.[15] A fourth SLIT product (Odactra) was approved by the FDA in March 2017 for house dust mite-induced AR, with or without conjunctivitis.[16] Several studies indicate that it improves AR in patients with AR and asthma symptoms, with efficacy that is maintained during treatment-free follow-up.[17-20]

The approved minimum age for use is 5, 10, 18, and 18 years of age, respectively, for Grastek, Oralair, Ragwitek, and Odactra.[13-16] All are approved for use in adults through 65 years of age.

### *Efficacy and impact on natural history of allergy*

For AR, rhinoconjunctivitis, and asthma, numerous double-blind, placebo-controlled trials, as well as several meta-analyses and systematic reviews, have confirmed that SLIT is effective in reducing symptom scores and medication use, improving quality of life, inducing favorable changes in specific immunologic markers, and modifying the course of the condition over time (**TABLE 1**).[21-30] Several randomized, double-blind studies demonstrated that 3 years of continuous treatment with the 1- or 5-grass pollen SLIT products resulted in clinical and immunologic benefits that were sustained for at least 2 subsequent years.[18,19]

The efficacy of SLIT has been compared to either pharmacotherapy or SCIT for management of ARC. A pooled analysis indirectly compared the treatment effect of SLIT (N=3094 in Timothy grass SLIT tablet trials; N=58 in ragweed SLIT tablet trials) vs pharmacotherapies (montelukast, N=6799; desloratadine, N=445; or mometasone furoate nasal spray, N=2140) for seasonal and perennial AR.[31] Improvement in total nasal symptom scores (TNSSs) relative to placebo in seasonal AR was numerically greater with SLIT than with montelukast and desloratadine (16.3% and 17.1% in the Timothy grass and ragweed trials, respectively, vs 5.4% and 8.5% in the montelukast and desloratadine trials, respectively), and was nearly as great as with mometasone furoate nasal spray (22.2%). Similar outcomes were reported in a meta-analysis indirectly comparing results from 28 pharmacotherapy trials and 10 grass pollen SLIT trials (total number of patients, N=21,223).[32] Grass pollen SLIT tablets had a greater mean relative clinical impact (based on reported posttreatment or season-long nasal or total symptom score) than second-generation antihistamines and montelukast, and the same mean relative clinical impact as nasal corticosteroids.[32]

Comparing the efficacy of SCIT with SLIT is difficult because of heterogeneity of allergen composition, dose, duration, and patient selection, particularly among older studies.[8,33-38] A 2015 network meta-analysis of 37 studies comparing grass pollen SCIT and SLIT tablets demonstrated comparable reduction in ARC symptoms and supplemental medication use during the first pollen season.[38]

**TABLE 1** Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials of SLIT tablets for grass and ragweed pollen

| Study | Age range (y) | A/P | Dropouts (A/P) | Product tested | Duration | Disease | Results |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Durham, 2006[21] | 18-65 | 569/286 | 44/21 | TGPAE | 8 wks before and during grass pollen season | Grass pollen–induced RCA | Reduction in RC score for symptoms (16%) and medication use (28%) vs placebo (*P*=.0710, *P*=.0470).<br>Better RC QOL scores (17%, *P*=0.006) and increased number of well days (18%, *P*=.041).<br>One drug-related serious adverse event (uvular edema); did not require treatment and did not lead to withdrawal.<br>No life-threatening systemic reactions or deaths. |
| Nelson 2011[22] | 18-65 | 213/225 | 38/33 | TGPAE | 16 wks before and during grass pollen season | Grass pollen–induced RCA with or w/out asthma | Improved TCS by 20% (*P*=.005), DSS by 18% (*P* =.02), and RQLQ(S) scores by 17% (*P*=.02).<br>DMS were improved by 26% (*P*=.08)<br>No treatment-related serious AEs or reports of anaphylactic shock/respiratory compromise. |
| Maloney 2014[23] | 5-65 | 1501 total (A + P) | NS | TGPAE | NS | Grass pollen–induced RCA with or w/out asthma | Improvements (*P*≤0.001) vs placebo of 23% in entire-season TCS, 29% in peak-season TCS, 20% in entire-season DSS, 35% in entire-season DMS; 12% in peak-season RC QOL questionnaire (*P*=.027). No serious treatment-related AEs or anaphylactic shock |
| Durham 2012[24] | 18-65 | 137/104 | NS | TGPAE | 4-8 mos before and during grass pollen season continued for 3 seasons; 2-y blinded follow-up | Grass pollen–induced RCA | SLIT vs placebo:<br>Mean RC DSS was reduced by 25%-36% (*P* ≤.004) over the 5 grass pollen seasons covered.<br>RCV DMS was reduced by 20%-45% (*P*≤.022 for seasons 1-4; *P* =.114 for season 5).<br>Weighted RC combined score was reduced by 27%-41% (*P*≤.003).<br>Percentage of days with severe symptoms during the peak grass pollen exposure was lower in all seasons in the active group than in the placebo group (relative differences of 49% to 63% (*P*<.0001).<br>No treatment-related serious AEs or events of severe systemic allergic reactions. |
| Cox 2012[25] | 18-65 | 233/240 | 26/17 | 5-GPAE | 6-mo preseasonal and coseasonal treatment and 2-wk follow-up | Grass pollen–induced RCA | The mean daily combined score over the pollen period was significantly lower w/SLIT vs placebo (LSM difference, -0.13; 95% CI, -0.19 to -0.06; *P*=.0003; relative reduction, 28.2%; 95% CI, -13.0% to -43.4%).<br>There were no reports of anaphylaxis, and no actively treated participant received epinephrine. |
| Didier 2007[26] | 18-45 | 472/156 | 59/10 | 5-GPAE | 4 mos prior to pollen season and continued throughout season | Grass pollen–induced RCA | Significantly reduced mean RC TSS (3.58 ± 3.0, *P*=.0001; and 3.74 ± 3.1, *P*=.0006 for 300-IR and 500-IR doses) vs placebo (4.93 ± 3.2).<br>No serious systemic events or anaphylactic shock were observed. |

CONTINUED

**TABLE 1** **Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials of SLIT tablets for grass and ragweed pollen** ***(Continued)***

| Study | Age range (y) | A/P | Dropouts (A/P) | Product tested | Duration | Disease | Results |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Didier 2011[27] | 18-50 | 414/219 | 117/56 | 5-GPAE | Either 2 or 4 mos before and then during grass pollen season for 3 consecutive seasons | Grass pollen–induced RCA | Mean AAdSS was reduced by 37.7% and 34.8% at season 3 in the 2- and 4-month preseasonal and coseasonal active treatment groups, respectively, vs placebo ($P$<.0001 for both).<br>1 severe local reaction and 1 angioedema during first year, resulting in study discontinuation. |
| Wahn 2009[28] | 5-17 | 139/139 | 8/4 | 5-GPAE | 4 mos before estimated pollen season and continued throughout season | Grass pollen–induced RCA | The 300-IR group showed a mean improvement for the RTSS of 28.0% over that seen with placebo ($P$=.001) and a median improvement of 39.3%.<br>AEs were generally mild or moderate in intensity and expected.<br>No serious side effects were reported. |
| Creticos 2013[29] | 18-50 | 586/198 | 140/38 | SRPAE | 52 wks of daily SLIT | Short ragweed–induced RCA | During peak season, low, medium, and high doses of SLIT reduced TCS by 9% (-0.76; $P$=.22), 19% (-1.58; $P$=.01), and 24% (-2.04; $P$=.002) compared with placebo.<br>No systemic allergic reactions occurred. |
| Nolte 2013[30] | 18-50 | 377/188 | 100/42 | SRPAE | 12 wks before and during entire ragweed season and thereafter up to 52 wks | Short ragweed–induced RCA | During peak season, the low and high ragweed AIT doses showed 21% (-1.76 score; $P$=.004) and 27% (-2.24 score; $P$<.001) improvement in TCS vs placebo.<br>No systemic allergic reactions were reported.<br>One patient in the treatment group received epinephrine at an emergency facility for sensation of localized pharyngeal edema. |

**Abbreviations:** AE, adverse event; AAdSS, average adjusted symptom score; AIT, allergy immunotherapy tablet; A/P, active/placebo; CI, confidence interval; DMS, daily medication score; DSS, daily symptom score; IR, index of reactivity; LSM, least-squares mean; NS, not stated; QOL, quality of life; RC, rhinoconjunctivitis; RCA, rhinoconjunctivitis/asthma; RQLQ(S), Standardized Rhinoconjunctivitis Quality of Life Questionnaire; RTSS, Rhinoconjunctivitis Total Symptom Score (RTSS); SLIT, sublingual immunotherapy; SRPAE, short ragweed pollen allergen extract; TCS, total combined score; TGPAE, Timothy grass pollen allergen extract; 5-GPAE, 5-grass pollen allergen extract; TSS, total symptom score.

### *Safety*

Based on more than 30 years of clinical use and more than 80 randomized, controlled trials, the safety profile of SLIT has been shown to be superior to SCIT.[39] No fatalities and few cases of anaphylaxis have been reported, with well over 1 million SLIT doses administered in clinical trials (as of 2006) and an estimated 1 billion doses administered worldwide between 2000 and 2012.[40]

Oral side effects (oral or ear pruritus, throat irritation, tongue pruritus, and mouth edema) are common with SLIT, affecting approximately 50% of patients, but typically last 10 days or less, and are infrequently (less than 5%) associated with discontinuation.[39] The occurrence and severity of adverse events declines in subsequent years of treatment. A low frequency of gastrointestinal side effects (eg, diarrhea, nausea, and abdominal pain) also may be observed.

Despite the extremely low incidence of systemic serious adverse reactions to SLIT, it is important to be familiar with potential factors that may increase the risk for its occurrence (**TABLE 2**).[40] Most important among these is severe, unstable, or uncontrolled asthma, which represents an absolute contraindication to SLIT (as well as to SCIT).[39] SLIT should also be avoided in patients with medical conditions that may reduce the ability to survive a serious allergic reaction or increase the risk for adverse reactions after epinephrine administration (eg, markedly compromised lung function, unstable angina, recent myocardial infarction, significant arrhythmia, and uncontrolled hypertension). SLIT may not be suitable for patients receiving medications that can potentiate or inhibit the effects of epinephrine (eg, beta-adrenergic blockers, alpha-adrenergic blockers, and tricyclic antidepressants).[13-15]

### Key points for primary care providers

While best practices to guide the use of SLIT tablets are still evolving, some key points regarding patient management are summarized below.[41]

It is essential that patient sensitivity to the specific seasonal allergen is confirmed by positive skin test or in vitro testing for pollen-specific IgE antibodies to the specific pollen in order to guide appropriate therapy.[13-15] The in vitro, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) test now recommended is an improvement over the radioallergosorbent test (RAST). SLIT is typically indicated for treatment of moderate to severe intermittent or persistent AR symptoms, particularly in patients who do not respond well to pharmacotherapy and environmental modification. These same considerations would likely be associated with perennial allergens.

Efficacy and safety of SLIT in children are similar to adults, and the 1- and 5-grass pollen products are indicated for children as young as 5 and 10 years old, respectively.[13,14,33]

Although patients with asthma were included in clinical trials of SLIT products, their asthma was well-controlled.[41] Therefore, caution should be used when initiating SLIT in patients with moderate-to-severe persistent and high-risk asthma, and SLIT should not be initiated or dosed at any time in patients with uncontrolled asthma. Other potential risk factors for SLIT-related anaphylaxis to be considered in patient selection for SLIT are listed in **TABLE 2**.[40]

New-onset eosinophilic esophagitis has been reported to occur after initiation of SLIT and to be resolved after discontinuation of SLIT.[41] Therefore, a history of eosinophilic esophagitis is a contraindication to initiation of SLIT. Patients on SLIT should be counseled to report worsening dysphagia and/or heartburn.[13-15]

The 1-grass pollen and ragweed pollen SLIT products are approved for treatment initiation at least 12 weeks before, and the 5-grass pollen product 16 weeks before, the expected onset of each grass or ragweed pollen season. All 3 products are continued throughout the season and then stopped. It is unclear whether SLIT can be safely initiated during the pollen season (coseasonal initiation) because of a potential increased risk for systemic allergic reactions.[42] However, a systematic review that included 11 SLIT studies found no increase in adverse events of concern with coseasonal vs out-of-season initiation.[42] Evidence indicates that 3 years of treatment is necessary to modify the disease process and achieve lasting efficacy. In fact, SLIT administered either before and during the allergy season or continuously for 3 years has been shown to reduce symptoms and use of rescue medication for up to 2 to 3 years after discontinuation of therapy.[5,24,27,43,44]

The 1-grass pollen and ragweed pollen SLIT products are dosed once daily, with no increase in or induction of dose.[14,15]

**TABLE 2 Potential risk factors for SLIT-associated anaphylaxis[40]**

| |
|---|
| Overdose |
| Interruptions in dose regimen |
| Previous systemic reaction, including anaphylaxis, to SCIT or SLIT |
| Previous severe local reaction |
| Asthma (particularly if severe or uncontrolled) |
| Acute infection (eg, upper respiratory infection) |
| Fever |
| Oral infections or lesions (eg, ulcer, gingivitis, periodontitis, etc) due to SLIT |
| Gender (premenstrual status) |
| Young age |
| Emotional stress |
| Exercise |
| High pollen counts |

**Abbreviations:** SCIT, subcutaneous immunotherapy; SLIT: sublingual immunotherapy.

**Source:** Adapted from: Calderon MA, Simons FER, Mailing H-J, Lockey RF, Moingeon P, Demoly P. Sublingual allergen immunotherapy: mode of action and its relationship with the safety profile. *Allergy*. 2012;67:302-311. © 2011 John Wiley & Sons A/S.

The 5-grass mixed pollen SLIT product is dosed once daily, with no increase in dose for adults 18 to 65 years of age.[13] For children 10 to 17 years of age, the dose is increased over the first 3 days to achieve the maintenance dose.

For initiation of SLIT-tablet therapy, the first dose is administered by the provider, followed by a 30-minute observation period to monitor for signs or symptoms of a severe systemic or local allergic reaction.[41] Epinephrine and other measures to treat anaphylaxis should be immediately available to the provider, and an epinephrine auto-injector should be prescribed for home use with instructions for when and how to use it. If the patient tolerates the first dose of SLIT, subsequent doses can be given at home. The patient should be instructed to remove the tablet from the blister pack with dry hands and to place it immediately under the tongue, allowing it to dissolve, and to avoid food or beverage for 5 minutes. Hands should be washed after handling the tablet.[13-15]

For mild-to-moderate oral adverse events and mild abdominal pain and nausea, antihistamine H1 and H2 blockers may be helpful.[41] Patients experiencing severe or recurrent symptoms should be instructed to contact the prescriber and consider stopping SLIT. To minimize the risk of serious harm, patients must be taught how to monitor for signs of rapidly progressing reactions, such as worsening laryngeal edema, urticaria, or shortness of breath, that may require epinephrine use.[41] Once suspected, anaphylaxis must be treated with an intramuscular injection of epinephrine, as death can occur

within minutes.[40] If SLIT is being administered to a child, the parent or other responsible adult must administer each dose and monitor the child for any serious allergic reaction.

Transitioning patients from SCIT to SLIT should be guided by the expertise of an allergy or immunology specialist. Concomitant administration of SCIT and SLIT has not been well-studied. Currently, there is no procedural terminology (CPT) code for billing purposes for SLIT administration.

Lastly, the cost of AIT varies widely. Data from 8 preferred provider organizations showed 60% to 80% coverage for SCIT, with weekly copays of $0 to $50 and deductibles from $0 to $7000.[45] Medicare had a flat rate of 80% coverage, costing the insurer $807.20 for a year of SCIT. The study also showed that the cost of SLIT ranged from $500 to $2100, depending on the allergy practice and the number of antigens treated. Another study showed that the total direct medical costs for SCIT were $32 per visit (range $13 to $61), with half accounted for by the cost of the extract.[46] Pre- and post-injection administrative tasks were the second largest driver of direct costs. ●

**REFERENCES**


1. Jutel M, Agache I, Bonini S, et al. International consensus on allergy immunotherapy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2015;136(3):556-568.
2. Hankin CS, Cox L, Lang D, et al. Allergy immunotherapy among Medicaid-enrolled children with allergic rhinitis: patterns of care, resource use, and costs. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2008;121(1):227-232.
3. Hankin CS, Cox L, Bronstone A, et al. Allergy immunotherapy: reduced health care costs in adults and children with allergic rhinitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;131(4):1084-1091.
4. Lin SY, Erekosima N, Suarez-Cuervo C, et al. Allergen-specific immunotherapy for the treatment of allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and/or asthma: comparative effectiveness review. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. http://effectivehealthcare.ahrq.gov/index.cfm/search-for-guides-reviews-and-reports/?productid=1427&pageaction=displayproduct. Updated March 27, 2013. Accessed March 2, 2017.
5. Durham SR, Penagos M. Sublingual or subcutaneous immunotherapy for allergic rhinitis? *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2016;137(2):339-349.
6. Burks AW, Calderon MA, Casale T, et al. Update on allergy immunotherapy: American Academy of Allergy, Asthma & Immunology/European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology/PRACTALL consensus report. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;131(5):1288-1296.
7. Eifan AO, Shamji MH, Durham SR. Long-term clinical and immunological effects of allergen immunotherapy. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;11(6):586-593.
8. Khinchi MS, Poulsen LK, Carat F, et al. Clinical efficacy of sublingual and subcutaneous birch pollen allergen-specific immunotherapy: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, double-dummy study. *Allergy*. 2004;59(1):45-53.
9. Jutel M, Agache I, Bonini S, et al. International consensus on allergen immunotherapy II: mechanisms, standardization, and pharmacoeconomics. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2016;137(2):358-368.
10. Frati F, Moingeon P, Marcucci F, et al. Mucosal immunization application to allergic disease: sublingual immunotherapy. *Allergy Asthma Proc*. 2007;28(1):35-39.
11. Calderon MA, Alves B, Jacobson M, et al. Allergen injection immunotherapy for seasonal allergic rhinitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2007;1:CD001936.
12. Skoner DP, Blaiss MS, Dykewicz MS, et al. The Allergies, Immunotherapy, and RhinoconjunctivitiS (AIRS) survey: patients' experience with allergen immunotherapy. *Allergy Asthma Proc*. 2014;35(3):219-226.
13. Oralair [package insert]. Lenoir, NC: GREER Laboratories, Inc.; 2016.
14. Grastek [package insert]. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp.; 2016.
15. Ragwitek [package insert]. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp.; 2016.
16. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA approves Odactra for house dust mite allergies. https://www.fda.gov/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm544330.htm. Published March 1, 2017. Accessed March 2, 2017.
17. Maloney J, Prenner BM, Bernstein DI, et al. Safety of house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy standardized quality tablet in children allergic to house dust mites. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2016;116(1):59-65.
18. Nolte H, Bernstein DI, Nelson HS, et al. Efficacy of house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy tablet in North American adolescents and adults in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2016;138(6):1631-1638.
19. Virchow JC, Backer V, Kuna P, et al. Efficacy of a house dust mite sublingual allergen immunotherapy tablet in adults with allergic asthma: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA*. 2016;315(16):1715-1725.
20. Zieglmayer P, Nolte H, Nelson HS, et al. Long-term effects of a house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy tablet in an environmental exposure chamber trial. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2016;117(6):690-696.
21. Durham SR, Yang WH, Pedersen MR, et al. Sublingual immunotherapy with once-daily grass allergen tablets: a randomized controlled trial in seasonal allergic rhinoconjunctivitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2006;117(4):802-809.
22. Nelson HS, Nolte H, Creticos P, et al. Efficacy and safety of timothy grass allergy immunotherapy tablet treatment in North American adults. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;127(1):72-80, 80.
23. Maloney J, Bernstein DI, Nelson H, et al. Efficacy and safety of grass sublingual immunotherapy tablet, MK-7243: a large randomized controlled trial. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2014;112(2):146-153.
24. Durham SR, Emminger W, Kapp A, et al. SQ-standardized sublingual grass immunotherapy: confirmation of disease modification 2 years after 3 years of treatment in a randomized trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2012;129(3):717-725.
25. Cox LS, Casale TB, Nayak AS, et al. Clinical efficacy of 300IR 5-grass pollen sublingual tablet in a US study: the importance of allergen-specific serum IgE. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2012;130(6):1327-1334.
26. Didier A, Malling HJ, Worm M, et al. Optimal dose, efficacy, and safety of once-daily sublingual immunotherapy with a 5-grass pollen tablet for seasonal allergic rhinitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2007;120(6):1338-1345.
27. Didier A, Worm M, Horak F, et al. Sustained 3-year efficacy of pre- and coseasonal 5-grass-pollen sublingual immunotherapy tablets in patients with grass pollen-induced rhinoconjunctivitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2011;128(3):559-566.
28. Wahn U, Tabar A, Kuna P, et al. Efficacy and safety of 5-grass-pollen sublingual immunotherapy tablets in pediatric allergic rhinoconjunctivitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2009;123(1):160-166.
29. Creticos PS, Maloney J, Bernstein DI, et al. Randomized controlled trial of a ragweed allergy immunotherapy tablet in North American and European adults. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;131(5):1342-1349.
30. Nolte H, Hebert J, Berman G, et al. Randomized controlled trial of ragweed allergy immunotherapy tablet efficacy and safety in North American adults. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol*. 2013;110(6):450-456.
31. Durham SR, Creticos PS, Nelson HS, et al. Treatment effect of sublingual immunotherapy tablets and pharmacotherapies for seasonal and perennial allergic rhinitis: Pooled analyses. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2016;138(4):1081-1088.
32. Devillier P, Dreyfus JF, Demoly P, et al. A meta-analysis of sublingual allergen immunotherapy and pharmacotherapy in pollen-induced seasonal allergic rhinoconjunctivitis. *BMC Med*. 2014;12:71.
33. Li JT, Bernstein DI, Calderon MA, et al. Sublingual grass and ragweed immunotherapy: Clinical considerations-a PRACTALL consensus report. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2016;137(2):369-376.
34. Di Bona D, Plaia A, Leto-Barone MS, et al. Efficacy of subcutaneous and sublingual immunotherapy with grass allergens for seasonal allergic rhinitis: a meta-analysis-based comparison. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2012;130(5):1097-1107.
35. Dretzke J, Meadows A, Novielli N, et al. Subcutaneous and sublingual immunotherapy for seasonal allergic rhinitis: a systematic review and indirect comparison. *J Allergy Clin Immunol*. 2013;131(5):1361-1366.
36. Chelladurai Y, Suarez-Cuervo C, Erekosima N, et al. Effectiveness of subcutaneous versus sublingual immunotherapy for the treatment of allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and asthma: a systematic review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2013;1(4):361-369.
37. Kim JM, Lin SY, Suarez-Cuervo C, et al. Allergen-specific immunotherapy for pediatric asthma and rhinoconjunctivitis: a systematic review. *Pediatrics*. 2013;131(6):1155-1167.
38. Nelson H, Cartier S, Allen-Ramey F, et al. Network meta-analysis shows commercialized subcutaneous and sublingual grass products have comparable efficacy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2015;3(2):256-266.
39. Passalacqua G, Nowak-Wegrzyn A, Canonica GW. Local side effects of sublingual and oral immunotherapy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2017;5(1):13-21.
40. Calderón MA, Simons FE, Malling HJ, et al. Sublingual allergen immunotherapy: mode of action and its relationship with the safety profile. *Allergy*. 2012;67(3):302-311.
41. Epstein TG, Calabria C, Cox LS, et al. Current evidence on safety and practical considerations for administration of sublingual allergen immunotherapy (SLIT) in the United States. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2017;5(1):34-40.
42. Creticos PS, Bernstein DI, Casale TB, et al. Coseasonal initiation of allergen immunotherapy: a systematic review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract*. 2016;4(6):1194-1204.
43. Durham SR, Walker SM, Varga EM, et al. Long-term clinical efficacy of grass-pollen immunotherapy. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(7):468-475.
44. Didier A, Malling HJ, Worm M, et al. Prolonged efficacy of the 300IR 5-grass pollen tablet up to 2 years after treatment cessation, as measured by a recommended daily combined score. *Clin Transl Allergy*. 2015;5:12.
45. Seiberling K, Hiebert J, Nyirady J, et al. Cost of allergy immunotherapy: sublingual vs subcutaneous administration. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol*. 2012;2(6):460-464.
46. Blume SW, Yeomans K, Allen-Ramey F, et al. Administration and burden of subcutaneous immunotherapy for allergic rhinitis in U.S. and Canadian clinical practice. *J Manag Care Spec Pharm*. 2015;21(11):982-990.

# Become a Member of the Primary Care Metabolic Group

The Primary Care Metabolic Group (PCMG) is a national educational initiative providing comprehensive metabolic disease education. PCMG's mission is to provide a representative forum for primary care clinicians involved in metabolic disease management and raise standards of patient care through the dissemination of best practices, education programs, and communication among members.

*Therapeutic areas covered by PCMG include:*
**Diabetes • Thyroid Disease • Lipid Disorders • Metabolic Syndrome • Obesity**
**Osteoporosis • Co-morbidities of metabolic disease including cardiovascular disease**

**Benefits of FREE membership include:**
Access to the PCMG website that includes up-to-date information on diabetes management including organizational activities, medical developments, relevant article highlights and commentaries, case studies and meeting information; A forum where Primary Care colleagues can discuss medical issues specifically related to metabolic diseases; **Opportunities for FREE CME**

**Membership is Free! Register at www.pcmg-us.org**

PCMG
Primary Care Metabolic Group

▲▲ DON'T MISS OPPORTUNITIES FOR FREE MEMBERSHIP AND FREE CME! ▼▼

# Join the Primary Care Respiratory Group!

The Primary Care Respiratory Group (PCRG) is a national educational initiative providing comprehensive respiratory disease education. PCRG's mission is to provide a representative forum for primary care clinicians involved in respiratory disease management and raise standards of patient care through the dissemination of best practices, education programs, and communication among members.

*Therapeutic areas covered by PCRG include:*
**Asthma • COPD • Infectious Respiratory Disease • Tuberculosis**

**Benefits of FREE membership include:**
Access to the PCRG website that includes up-to-date information including organizational activities, medical developments, relevant article highlights and commentaries, case studies and meeting information; A forum where Primary Care colleagues can discuss medical issues specifically related to respiratory diseases; **Opportunities for FREE CME**

PCRG-US
Primary Care Respiratory Group

**Register for FREE at www.pcrg-us.org**

SUPPLEMENT TO
THE JOURNAL OF
FAMILY
PRACTICE®